



**International  
Association  
of Oil & Gas  
Producers**



**Geomatics  
Guidance Note Number 7, part 2**

**Coordinate Conversions and Transformations including Formulas**

**Revised - July 2012**

## ***Index***

<b>Preface</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Revision history</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1 <u>MAP PROJECTIONS AND THEIR COORDINATE CONVERSION FORMULAS</u></b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.2 MAP PROJECTION PARAMETERS</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.3 MAP PROJECTION FORMULAS</b>	<b>15</b>
1.3.1 LAMBERT CONIC CONFORMAL	16
1.3.1.1 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP)	18
1.3.1.2 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP)	19
1.3.1.3 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP West Orientated)	21
1.3.1.4 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP Belgium)	21
1.3.1.5 Lambert Conic Near-Conformal	22
1.3.2 KROVAK	24
1.3.2.1 Krovak	25
1.3.2.2 Krovak (North Orientated)	28
1.3.2.3 Krovak Modified	29
1.3.2.4 Krovak Modified (North Orientated)	31
1.3.3 MERCATOR	32
1.3.3.1 Mercator (Spherical)	37
1.3.3.2 Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator	38
1.3.4 CASSINI-SOLDNER	40
1.3.4.1 Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner	42
1.3.5 TRANSVERSE MERCATOR	43
1.3.5.1 General Case	43
1.3.5.2 Transverse Mercator Zoned Grid System	51
1.3.5.3 Transverse Mercator (South Orientated)	52
1.3.6 OBLIQUE MERCATOR	54
1.3.6.1 Hotine Oblique Mercator	55
1.3.6.2 Laborde Oblique Mercator	59
1.3.7 STEREOGRAPHIC	61
1.3.7.1 Oblique and Equatorial Stereographic	62
1.3.7.2 Polar Stereographic	64
1.3.8 NEW ZEALAND MAP GRID	70
1.3.9 TUNISIA MINING GRID	70
1.3.10 AMERICAN POLYCONIC	71
1.3.11 LAMBERT AZIMUTHAL EQUAL AREA	72
1.3.11.1 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (Spherical)	74
1.3.12 LAMBERT CYLINDRICAL EQUAL AREA	74
1.3.12.1 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area (Spherical)	74
1.3.13 ALBERS EQUAL AREA	75
1.3.14 EQUIDISTANT CYLINDRICAL	76
1.3.14.1 Equidistant Cylindrical (Spherical)	78
1.3.14.2 Pseudo Plate Carrée	78
1.3.15 BONNE	79
1.3.15.1 Bonne (South Orientated)	79
1.3.16 AZIMUTHAL EQUIDISTANT	80
1.3.16.1 Modified Azimuthal Equidistant	80
1.3.16.2 Guam Projection	81
1.3.17 PERSPECTIVES	83

1.3.17.1	Intoduction	83
1.3.17.2	Vertical Perspective	84
1.3.17.3	Vertical Perspective (orthographic case)	85
1.3.18	ORTHOGRAPHIC	86

## **2 FORMULAS FOR COORDINATE OPERATIONS OTHER THAN MAP PROJECTIONS 89**

<b>2.1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>89</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>COORDINATE CONVERSIONS OTHER THAN MAP PROJECTIONS</b>	<b>89</b>
2.2.1	GEOGRAPHIC/GEOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	89
2.2.2	GEOCENTRIC/TOPOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	91
2.2.3	GEOGRAPHIC/TOPOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	94
2.2.4	GEOGRAPHIC 3D TO 2D CONVERSIONS	96
<b>2.3</b>	<b>COORDINATE OPERATION METHODS THAT CAN BE CONVERSIONS OR TRANSFORMATIONS</b>	<b>97</b>
2.3.1	POLYNOMIAL TRANSFORMATIONS	97
2.3.1.1	General case	97
2.3.1.2	Polynomial transformation with complex numbers	102
2.3.1.3	Polynomial transformation for Spain	104
2.3.2	MISCELLANEOUS LINEAR COORDINATE OPERATIONS	105
2.3.2.1	Affine Parametric Transformation	105
2.3.2.2	Affine General Geometric Transformation	106
2.3.2.3	Similarity Transformation	109
2.3.2.4	P6 Right-handed Seismic Bin Grid Transformation	112
2.3.2.5	P6 Left-handed Seismic Bin Grid Transformation	116
<b>2.4</b>	<b>COORDINATE TRANSFORMATIONS</b>	<b>118</b>
2.4.1	OFFSETS - GENERAL	118
2.4.1.1	Cartesian Grid Offsets from Form Function	118
2.4.2	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN VERTICAL COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	119
2.4.2.1	Vertical Offset	119
2.4.2.2	Vertical Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data	120
2.4.2.3	Vertical Offset and Slope	120
2.4.3	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN GEOCENTRIC COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	122
2.4.3.1	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	122
2.4.3.2	Helmert 7-parameter transformations	123
2.4.3.3	Molodensky-Badekas transformation (geocentric domain)	125
2.4.4	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN GEOGRAPHIC COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	126
2.4.4.1	Transformations using geocentric methods	126
2.4.4.2	Abridged Molodensky transformation	130
2.4.4.3	Geographic Offsets	131
2.4.4.4	Geographic Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data	132
2.4.5	GEOID AND HEIGHT CORRECTION MODELS	132
2.4.5.1	Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight	132
2.4.5.2	Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight	133
2.4.5.3	Geographic2D with Height Offsets	134

## **Preface**

The EPSG Geodetic Parameter Dataset, abbreviated to the **EPSG Dataset**, is a repository of parameters required to:

- define a *coordinate reference system* (CRS) which ensures that coordinates describe position unambiguously.
- define transformations and conversions that allow coordinates to be changed from one CRS to another CRS. Transformations and conversions are collectively called *coordinate operations*.

The EPSG Dataset is maintained by the OGP Surveying and Positioning Committee's Geodetic Subcommittee. It conforms to ISO 19111 – *Spatial referencing by coordinates*. It is distributed in three ways:

- the **EPSG Registry**, in full the *EPSG Geodetic Parameter Registry*, a web-based delivery platform in which the data is held in GML using the CRS entities described in ISO 19136.
- the **EPSG Database**, in full the *EPSG Geodetic Parameter Database*, a relational database structure where the entities which form the components of CRSs and coordinate operations are in separate tables, distributed as an MS Access database;
- in a relational data model as **SQL scripts** which enable a user to create an Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL or other relational database and populate that database with the EPSG Dataset;

OGP Surveying and Positioning Guidance Note 7 is a multi-part document for users of the EPSG Dataset.

- *Part 0, Quick Start Guide*, gives a basic overview of the Dataset and its use.
- *Part 1, Using the Dataset*, sets out detailed information about the Dataset and its content, maintenance and terms of use.
- *Part 2, Formulas*, (this document), provides a detailed explanation of formulas necessary for executing coordinate conversions and transformations using the coordinate operation methods supported in the EPSG dataset. Geodetic parameters in the Dataset are consistent with these formulas.
- *Part 3, Registry Developer Guide*, is primarily intended to assist computer application developers who wish to use the API of the Registry to query and retrieve entities and attributes from the dataset.
- *Part 4, Database Developer Guide*, is primarily intended to assist computer application developers who wish to use the Database or its relational data model to query and retrieve entities and attributes from the dataset.

The complete text may be found at <http://www.epsg.org/guides/index.html>. The terms of use of the dataset are also available at <http://www.epsg.org/CurrentDB.html>.

In addition to these documents, the Registry user interface contains online help and the Database user interface includes context-sensitive help accessed by left-clicking on any label.

This Part 2 of the multipart Guidance Note is primarily intended to assist computer application developers in using the coordinate operation methods supported by the EPSG Dataset. It may also be useful to other users of the data.

Further test data to supplement the examples in this document may be found in OGP Publication 430, Guidelines for Geospatial Integrity of Geoscience Software (GIGS), part 3, Test Dataset.

A **coordinate system** is a set of mathematical rules for specifying how coordinates are to be assigned to points. It includes the definition of the coordinate axes, the units to be used and the geometry of the axes. The coordinate system is unrelated to the Earth. A **coordinate reference system (CRS)** is a coordinate system related to the Earth through a **datum**. Colloquially the term coordinate system has historically been used to mean coordinate reference system.

Coordinates may be changed from one coordinate reference system to another through the application of a **coordinate operation**. Two types of coordinate operation may be distinguished:

- **coordinate conversion**, where no change of datum is involved and the parameters are chosen and thus error free.
- **coordinate transformation**, where the target CRS is based on a different datum to the source CRS. Transformation parameters are empirically determined and thus subject to measurement errors.

A projected coordinate reference system is the result of the application of a **map projection** to a geographic coordinate reference system. A map projection is a type of coordinate conversion. It uses an identified method with specific formulas and a set of parameters specific to that coordinate conversion method.

Map projection methods are described in section 1 below. Other coordinate conversions and transformations are described in section 2.

**Revision history:**

<u>Version</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Amendments</u>
1	December 1993	First release – POSC Epicentre
10	May 1998	Additionally issued as an EPSG guidance note.
11	November 1998	Polynomial for Spain and Tunisia Mining Grid methods added.
12	February 1999	Abridged Molodensky formulas corrected.
13	July 1999	Lambert Conic Near Conformal and American Polyconic methods added.
14	December 1999	Stereographic and Tunisia Mining Grid formulas corrected. Krovak method added.
15	June 2000	General Polynomial and Affine methods added
16	December 2000	Lambert Conformal (Belgium) remarks revised; Oblique Mercator methods consolidated and formulas added. Similarity Transformation reversibility remarks amended.
17	June 2001	Lambert Conformal, Mercator and Helmert formulas corrected.
18	August 2002	Revised to include ISO 19111 terminology. Section numbering revised. Added Preface. Lambert Conformal (West Orientated), Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area, Albers, Equidistant Cylindrical (Plate Carrée), TM zoned, Bonne, Molodensky-Badedas methods added. Errors in Transverse Mercator (South Orientated) formula corrected.
19	December 2002	Polynomial formulas amended. Formula for spherical radius in Equidistant Cylindrical projection amended. Formula for Krovak projection amended. Degree representation conversions added. Editorial amendments made to subscripts and superscripts.
20	May 2003	Font for Greek symbols in Albers section amended.
21	October 2003	Typographic errors in example for Lambert Conic (Belgium) corrected. Polar Stereographic formulae extended for secant variants. General polynomial extended to degree 13. Added Abridged Molodensky and Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area examples and Reversible polynomial formulae.
22	December 2003	Errors in FE and FN values in example for Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area corrected.
23	January 2004	Database codes for Polar Stereographic variants corrected. Degree representation conversions withdrawn.
24	October 2004  From this revision, published as part 2 of a two-part set.	Corrected equation for u in Oblique Mercator. Added Guam projection, Geographic 3D to 2D conversion, vertical offset and gradient method, geoid models, bilinear interpolation methods. Added tables giving projection parameter definitions. Amended Molodensky-Badekas method name and added example. Added section on reversibility to Helmert 7-parameter transformations. Transformation section 2 reordered. Section 3 (concatenated operations) added.
25	May 2005	Amended reverse formulas for Lambert Conic Near-Conformal. Corrected Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area formulae. Symbol for latitude of pseudo standard parallel parameter made consistent. Corrected Affine Orthogonal Geometric transformation reverse example. Added Modified Azimuthal Equidistant projection.
26	July 2005	Further correction to Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area formulae. Correction to Moldenski-Badekas example.
27	September 2005	Miscellaneous linear coordinate operations paragraphs re-written to include reversibility and UKOOA P6. Improved formula for r' in Lambert Conic Near-Conformal.
28	November 2005	Corrected error in formula for t and false grid coordinates of 2SP example in Mercator projection.
29	April 2006	Typographic errors corrected. (For oblique stereographic, corrected formula for w. For Lambert azimuthal equal area, changed example. For Albers equal area, corrected formulae for alpha. For modified azimuthal equidistant, corrected formula for c. For Krovak, corrected formula for theta', clarified formulae for tO and lat. For Cassini, in example corrected radian value of longitude of natural origin). References to EPSG updated.
30	June 2006	Added Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner. Corrected FE and FN values in example for

		Modified Azimuthal Equidistant. Added note to Krovak. Amended Abridged Molodensky description, corrected example.
31	August 2006	Corrected sign of value for G in Modified Azimuthal Equidistant example.
32	February 2007	Descriptive text for Oblique Mercator amended; formula for Laborde projection for Madagascar added. Added polar aspect equations for Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area. Corrected example in polynomial transformation for Spain. For Lambert 1SP, corrected equation for $r'$ .
33	March 2007	For Krovak example, corrected axis names.
34	July 2007	Note on longitude wrap-around added prior to preamble to map projection formulas, section 1.4. For Laborde, corrected formula for $q'$ . For Albers Equal Area, corrected formulae for $\alpha$ and $\beta'$ .
35	April 2008	Longitude wrap-around note clarified. For Oblique Mercator, corrected symbol in formula for longitude. For Krovak, clarified defining parameters. Amended Vertical Offset description and formula. Added geographic/topocentric conversions, geocentric/topocentric conversions, Vertical Perspective, Orthographic, Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area, ellipsoidal development of Equidistant Cylindrical. Removed section on identification of map projection method.
36	July 2008	For Lambert Conic Near Conformal, corrected equations for $\phi'$ .
37	August 2008	Corrected general polynomial example.
38	January 2009	For Mercator (1SP), clarified use of $\phi_0$ . For Molodensky-Badekas, augmented example. Added Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator method, added formulas and examples for Mercator (Spherical) and formulas for American Polyconic.
39	April 2009	Preface revised to be consistent with other parts of GN7. For Lambert Azimuth Equal Area, in example corrected symbol for $\beta'$ . For Krovak, corrected formulas. For Equidistant Cylindrical (spherical) corrected formula for R; comments on R added to all spherical methods. For Equidistant Cylindrical updated formula to harmonise parameters and symbols with similar methods.
40	November 2009	For geographic/geocentric conversions, corrected equation for $\phi$ . For Transverse Mercator (South Oriented), added example. Corrected equation for computation of radius of authalic sphere (optionally referenced by equal area methods developed on a sphere). Augmented description of geocentric methods to clearly discriminate the coordinate domain to which they are applied.
41	October 2010	Augmented Transverse Mercator for wide area. Amended TM(SO) example. Amended Mercator and Oblique Mercator variant names, added Mercator variant C method. Corrected Oblique Mercator (Hotine variant B) formulae for azimuth = 90° case. Added Krovak variants. Corrected Polar Stereographic equations for calculation of longitude. Augmented reverse case for Similarity Transformation. References to OGP publication 430 (GIGS test data) added.
42	November 2010	Corrected formula for t in Mercator variant C reverse case.
43	July 2011	Corrected formulae for $\xi_0$ parameters in Transverse Mercator. Corrected coefficient B1 and longitude example in Polynomial transformation for Spain.
44	April 2012	Added missing equations for reverse case of American Polyconic. Amended Transverse Mercator JHS formula to allow for origin at pole. Corrected Modified Krovak formula and example. Corrected equation for u' in Hotine Oblique Mercator.
45	July 2012	Added left-handed bin grid method.

## **1 Map projections and their coordinate conversion formulas**

### **1.1 Introduction**

Setting aside the large number of map projection methods which may be employed for atlas maps, equally small scale illustrative exploration maps, and wall maps of the world or continental areas, the EPSG dataset provides reference parameter values for orthomorphic or conformal map projections which are used for medium or large scale topographic or exploration mapping. Here accurate positions are important and sometimes users may wish to scale accurate positions, distances or areas from the maps.

Small scale maps normally assume a spherical earth and the inaccuracies inherent in this assumption are of no consequence at the usual scale of these maps. For medium and large scale sheet maps, or maps and coordinates held digitally to a high accuracy, it is essential that due regard is paid to the actual shape of the Earth. Such coordinate reference systems are therefore invariably based on an ellipsoid and its derived map projections. The EPSG dataset and this supporting conversion documentation considers only map projections for the ellipsoid.

Though not exhaustive the following list of named map projection methods are those which are most frequently encountered for medium and large scale mapping, some of them much less frequently than others since they are designed to serve only one particular country. They are grouped according to their possession of similar properties, which will be explained later. Except where indicated all are conformal.

Mercator with one standard parallel with two standard parallels	Cylindrical
Cassini-Soldner (N.B. not conformal)	Transverse Cylindrical
Transverse Mercator Group Transverse Mercator (including south oriented version) Universal Transverse Mercator Gauss-Kruger Gauss-Boaga	Transverse Cylindrical
Oblique Mercator Group Hotine Oblique Mercator Laborde Oblique Mercator	Oblique Cylindrical
Lambert Conical Conformal with one standard parallel with two standard parallels	Conical
Stereographic Polar Oblique and equatorial	Azimuthal

## 1.2 Map Projection parameters

A map projection grid is related to the geographical graticule of an ellipsoid through the definition of a coordinate conversion method and a set of parameters appropriate to that method. Different conversion methods may require different parameters. Any one coordinate conversion method may take several different sets of associated parameter values, each set related to a particular map projection zone applying to a particular country or area of the world. Before setting out the formulas involving these parameters, which enable the coordinate conversions for the projection methods listed above, it is as well to understand the nature of the parameters.

The plane of the map and the ellipsoid surface may be assumed to have one particular point in common. This point is referred to as the **natural origin**. It is the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). For example, for projected coordinate reference systems using the Cassini-Soldner or Transverse Mercator methods, the natural origin is at the intersection of a chosen parallel and a chosen meridian (see figure 5 in section 1.3.5). The chosen parallel will frequently but not necessarily be the equator. The chosen meridian will usually be central to the mapped area. For the stereographic projection the origin is at the centre of the projection where the plane of the map is imagined to be tangential to the ellipsoid.

Since the natural origin may be at or near the centre of the projection and under normal coordinate circumstances would thus give rise to negative coordinates over parts of the map, this origin is usually given false coordinates which are large enough to avoid this inconvenience. Hence each natural origin will normally have **False Easting, FE** and **False Northing, FN** values. For example, the false easting for the origins of all Universal Transverse Mercator zones is 500000m. As the UTM origin lies on the equator, areas north of the equator do not need and are not given a false northing but for mapping southern hemisphere areas the equator origin is given a false northing of 10,000,000m, thus ensuring that no point in the southern hemisphere will take a negative northing coordinate. Figure 7 in section 1.3.5 illustrates the UTM arrangements.

These arrangements suggest that if there are false easting and false northing for the real or natural origin, there is also a **Grid Origin** which has coordinates (0,0). In general this point is of no consequence though its geographic position may be computed if needed. For example, for the WGS 84 / UTM zone 31N coordinate reference system which has a natural origin at 0°N, 3°E where false easting is 500000m E (and false northing is 0m N), the grid origin is at 0°N, 1°29'19.478"W. Sometimes however, rather than base the easting and northing coordinate reference system on the natural origin by giving it **FE** and **FN** values, it may be convenient to select a **False Origin** at a specific meridian/parallel intersection and attribute the false coordinates **Easting at False Origin, E<sub>F</sub>** and **Northing at False Origin, N<sub>F</sub>** to this. The related easting and northing of the natural origin may then be computed if required.

Longitudes are most commonly expressed relative to the **Prime Meridian** of Greenwich but some countries, particularly in former times, have preferred to relate their longitudes to a prime meridian through their national astronomic observatory, usually sited in or near their capital city, e.g. Paris for France, Bogota for Colombia. The meridian of the projection zone origin is known as the **Longitude of Origin**. For certain projection types it is often termed the **Central Meridian** or abbreviated as **CM** and provides the direction of the northing axis of the projected coordinate reference system.

Because of the steadily increasing distortion in the scale of the map with increasing distance from the origin, central meridian or other line on which the scale is the nominal scale of the projection, it is usual to limit the extent of a projection to within a few degrees of latitude or longitude of this point or line. Thus, for example, a UTM or other Transverse Mercator projection zone will normally extend only 2 or 3 degrees from the central meridian. Beyond this area another **zone** of the projection, with a new origin and central meridian, needs to be used or created. The UTM system has a specified 60 numbered zones, each 6 degrees wide,

covering the ellipsoid between the 84 degree North and 80 degree South latitude parallels. Other Transverse Mercator projection zones may be constructed with different central meridians, and different origins chosen to suit the countries or states for which they are used. A number of these are included in the EPSG dataset. Similarly a Lambert Conic Conformal zone distorts most rapidly in the north-south direction and may, as in Texas, be divided into latitudinal bands.

In order to further limit the scale distortion within the coverage of the zone or projection area, some projections introduce a **scale factor** at the origin (on the central meridian for Transverse Mercator projections), which has the effect of reducing the nominal scale of the map here and making it have the nominal scale some distance away. For example in the case of the UTM and some other Transverse Mercator projections a scale factor of slightly less than unity is introduced on the central meridian thus making it unity on two roughly north-south lines either side of the central one, and reducing its departure from unity beyond these. The scale factor is a required parameter whether or not it is unity and is usually symbolised as **k<sub>0</sub>**.

Thus for projections in the Transverse Mercator group in section 1.1 above, the parameters which are required to completely and unambiguously define the projection method are:

- Latitude of natural origin ( $\phi_0$ )
- Longitude of natural origin (the central meridian) ( $\lambda_0$ )
- Scale factor at natural origin (on the central meridian) ( $k_0$ )
- False easting (FE)
- False northing (FN)

This set of parameters may also be used by other projection methods. However for some of these other methods, including the Lambert Conic Conformal, the projection may be defined using alternative parameters. It is possible to replace the latitude of natural origin and scale factor by instead giving the latitude of the two parallels along which scale is true, the 'standard parallels'. This results in the following set of parameters, which we call variant B:

- Latitude of first standard parallel ( $\phi_1$ )
- Latitude of second standard parallel ( $\phi_2$ )
- Longitude of natural origin (the central meridian) ( $\lambda_0$ )
- False easting (FE)
- False northing (FN)

For the Lambert Conic Conformal projection on the ellipsoid the single parallel at which scale is a minimum – the latitude of natural origin – is slightly poleward of midway between the two standard parallels. It is usual to choose values which are round numbers for the two standard parallels, which results in the latitude of natural origin having an irregular value. It is then more convenient to define the false grid coordinates at some other point itself having round number values. This results in the following set of parameters (variant C):

- Latitude of first standard parallel ( $\phi_1$ )
- Latitude of second standard parallel ( $\phi_2$ )
- Latitude of false origin ( $\phi_F$ )
- Longitude of false origin ( $\lambda_F$ )
- False easting ( $E_F$ )
- False northing ( $N_F$ )

In the limiting cases of the Lambert Conic Conformal when the standard parallel is the equator or a pole, for the Mercator projection the two standard parallels have the same latitude in opposite hemispheres. It is therefore only necessary to have one of them as a defining parameter. Similarly in the other limiting case, the Polar Stereographic projection, there is only one standard parallel. In these projection methods, for variant B the set of parameters reduces to:

Latitude of standard parallel ( $\phi_1$ )  
 Longitude of natural origin (the central meridian) ( $\lambda_0$ )  
 False easting (FE)  
 False northing (FN)

with a similar reduction for variant C.

Variants A and B are alternative ways of defining one projection. Regardless of whether variant A or variant B is used for the projection definition the conversion of geographic coordinates will produce the same grid coordinates. However in the case of variant C the conversion of the same geographic coordinates will produce different grid coordinates to those of variants A and B, except in the special and unusual case when the latitude of the false origin is chosen to exactly coincide with the natural origin.

It is EPSG policy to document the parameters and their values for these variants as they are defined by the information source. To accomplish this EPSG recognises the variants as different methods, each with their own name and formulas:

<u>General Method</u>	<u>Variant A</u>	<u>Variant B</u>	<u>Variant C</u>
Lambert Conic Conformal	Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP)	<i>(not used)</i>	Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP)
Mercator	Mercator (variant A) alias Mercator (1SP)	Mercator (variant B)	Mercator (variant C)
Polar Stereographic	Polar Stereographic (variant A)	Polar Stereographic (variant B)	Polar Stereographic (variant C)

This concept is continued with some other projection methods in which variants are found, but in these the relationship between the alternative sets of parameters may be less straightforward:

<u>General Method</u>	<u>Variant A</u>	<u>Variant B</u>	<u>Variant C</u>
Oblique Mercator	Hotine Oblique Mercator (variant A) aliases Hotine Oblique Mercator, Rectified Skew Orthomorphic	Hotine Oblique Mercator (variant B) aliases Oblique Mercator, Rectified Skew Orthomorphic	Laborde Oblique Mercator alias Laborde Madagascar

For the Oblique Mercator it is also possible to define the azimuth of the initial line through the latitude and longitude of two widely spaced points along that line. This approach is not included in the EPSG Dataset.

The following tables give the definitions of parameters used in the projection formulas which follow.

**TABLE 1.  
Parameters used in map projection conversions**

<b>Parameter Name</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Description</b>
Angle from Rectified to Skew Grid	$\gamma_C$	The angle at the natural origin of an oblique projection through which the natural coordinate reference system is rotated to make the projection north axis parallel with true north.
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	The azimuthal direction (north zero, east of north being positive) of the great circle which is the centre line of an oblique projection. The azimuth is given at the projection centre.
Central meridian		See Longitude of natural origin
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	The easting value assigned to the false origin.
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	The easting value assigned to the projection centre.

Parameter Name	Symbol	Description
False easting	FE	The value assigned to the abscissa (east or west) axis of the projection grid at the natural origin.
False northing	FN	The value assigned to the ordinate (north or south) axis of the projection grid at the natural origin.
False origin		A specific parallel/meridian intersection other than the natural origin to which the grid coordinates $E_F$ and $N_F$ , are assigned.
Grid origin		The point which has coordinates (0,0). It is offset from the natural origin by the false easting and false northing. In some projection methods it may alternatively be offset from the false origin by Easting at false origin and Northing at false origin. In general this point is of no consequence.
Initial line		The line on the surface of the earth model which forms the axis for the grid of an oblique projection.
Initial longitude	$\lambda_I$	The longitude of the western limit of the first zone of a Transverse Mercator zoned grid system.
Latitude of 1st standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	<u>For a conic projection with two standard parallels, this is the latitude of one of the parallels at which the cone intersects with the ellipsoid. It is normally but not necessarily that nearest to the pole. Scale is true along this parallel.</u>
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	For a conic projection with two standard parallels, this is the latitude of one of the parallels at which the cone intersects with the ellipsoid. It is normally but not necessarily that nearest to the equator. Scale is true along this parallel.
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	The latitude of the point which is not the natural origin and at which grid coordinate values easting at false origin and northing at false origin are defined.
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_O$	The latitude of the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the latitude of the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0).
Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	For an oblique projection, this is the latitude of the point at which the azimuth of the initial line is defined.
Latitude of pseudo standard parallel	$\varphi_P$	Latitude of the parallel on which the conic or cylindrical projection is based. This latitude is not geographic, but is defined on the conformal sphere AFTER its rotation to obtain the oblique aspect of the projection.
Latitude of standard parallel	$\varphi_F$	For polar aspect azimuthal projections, the parallel on which the scale factor is defined to be unity.
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	The longitude of the point which is not the natural origin and at which grid coordinate values easting at false origin and northing at false origin are defined.
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_O$	The longitude of the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the longitude of the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). Sometimes known as "central meridian (CM)".
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	For polar aspect azimuthal projections, the meridian along which the northing axis increments and also across which parallels of latitude increment towards the north pole.

<b>Parameter Name</b>	<b>Symbol</b>	<b>Description</b>
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	For an oblique projection, this is the longitude of the point at which the azimuth of the initial line is defined.
Natural origin		The point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). For example, for projected coordinate reference systems using the Transverse Mercator method, the natural origin is at the intersection of a chosen parallel and a chosen central meridian.
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	The northing value assigned to the false origin.
Northing at projection centre	$N_C$	The northing value assigned to the projection centre.
Origin		See natural origin, false origin and grid origin.
Projection centre		On an oblique cylindrical or conical projection, the point at which the direction of the cylinder or cone and false coordinates are defined.
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_O$	The factor by which the map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value at the natural origin.
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	The factor by which an oblique projection's map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value along the centre line of the cylinder or cone.
Scale factor on pseudo standard parallel	$k_P$	The factor by which the map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value at the pseudo-standard parallel.
Zone width	$W$	The longitude width of a zone of a Transverse Mercator zoned grid system.

**TABLE 2**  
**Summary of Coordinate Operation Parameters required for selected Map Projection methods**

<b><u>Coordinate Operation Parameter Name</u></b>	<b><u>Coordinate Operation Method</u></b>								
	Mercator (variant A)	Mercator (variant B)	Cassini-Soldner	Transverse Mercator	Hotine Oblique Mercator (variant A)	Hotine Oblique Mercator (variant B)	Lambert Conical (1 SP)	Lambert Conical (2 SP)	Oblique Stereographic
Latitude of false origin								1	
Longitude of false origin								2	
Latitude of 1st standard parallel		1						3	
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel								4	
Easting at false origin								5	
Northing at false origin								6	
Latitude of projection centre					1	1			
Longitude of projection centre					2	2			
Scale factor on initial line					3	3			
Azimuth of initial line					4	4			
Angle from Rectified to Skewed grid					5	5			
Easting at projection centre						6			
Northing at projection centre						7			
Latitude of natural origin	1 =equator		1	1			1		1
Longitude of natural origin	2	2	2	2			2		2
Scale factor at natural origin	3			3			3		3
False easting	4	3	3	4	6		4		4
False northing	5	4	4	5	7		5		5

TABLE 3  
**Ellipsoid parameters used in conversions and transformations**

In the formulas in this Guidance Note the basic ellipsoidal parameters are represented by symbols and derived as follows:

<b>Primary ellipsoid parameters</b>		
<u>Parameter Name</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>
semi-major axis	a	Length of the semi-major axis of the ellipsoid, the radius of the equator.
semi-minor axis	b	Length of the semi-minor axis of the ellipsoid, the distance along the ellipsoid axis between equator and pole.
inverse flattening	1/f	= a/(a - b)
<b>Derived ellipsoid parameters</b>		
<u>Parameter Name</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>
flattening	f	= 1 / (1/f)
eccentricity	e	= $\sqrt{2f - f^2}$
second eccentricity	e'	= $\sqrt{e^2 / (1 - e^2)}$
radius of curvature in the meridian	$\rho$	radius of curvature of the ellipsoid in the plane of the meridian at latitude $\phi$ , where $\rho = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi)^{3/2}$
radius of curvature in the prime vertical	$\nu$	radius of curvature of the ellipsoid perpendicular to the meridian at latitude $\phi$ , where $\nu = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi)^{1/2}$
radius of authalic sphere	R <sub>A</sub>	radius of sphere having same surface area as ellipsoid. $R_A = a * [(1 - \{(1 - e^2) / (2 e)\}) * \{LN[(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\}] * 0.5]^{0.5}$
radius of conformal sphere	R <sub>C</sub>	= $\sqrt{\rho \nu} = [a \sqrt{(1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi)}$ This is a function of latitude and therefore not constant. When used for spherical projections the use of $\phi_0$ (or $\phi_1$ as relevant to method) for $\phi$ is suggested, except if the projection is equal area when R <sub>A</sub> (see above) should be used.

### 1.3 Map Projection formulas

In general, only formulas for computation on the ellipsoid are considered. Projection formulas for the spherical earth are simpler but the spherical figure is inadequate to represent positional data with great accuracy at large map scales for the real earth. Projections of the sphere are only suitable for illustrative maps at scale of 1:1 million or less where precise positional definition is not critical.

The formulas which follow are largely adapted from "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by J.P.Snyder, published by the U.S. Geological Survey as Professional Paper No.1395<sup>1</sup>. As well as providing an extensive overview of most map projections in current general use, and the formulas for their construction for both the spherical and ellipsoidal earth, this excellent publication provides computational hints and details of the accuracies attainable by the formulas. It is strongly recommended that all those who have to deal with map projections for medium and large scale mapping should follow its guidance.

134134\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>1</sup> This was originally published with the title "Map Projections Used by the US Geological Survey". In some cases the formulas given are insufficient for global use. In these cases EPSG has modified the formulas. Note that the origin of most map projections is given false coordinates (FE and FN or E<sub>F</sub> and N<sub>F</sub> or E<sub>C</sub> and N<sub>C</sub>) to avoid negative coordinates. In the EPSG formulas these values are included where appropriate so that the projected coordinates of points result directly from the quoted formulas.

There are a number of different formulas available in the literature for map projections other than those quoted by Snyder. Some are closed formulas; others, for ease of calculation, may depend on series expansions and their precision will generally depend on the number of terms used for computation. Generally those formulas which follow in this chapter will provide results which are accurate to within a decimetre, which is normally adequate for exploration mapping purposes. Coordinate expression and computations for engineering operations are usually consistently performed in grid terms.

The importance of one further variable should be noted. This is the unit of linear measurement used in the definition of projected coordinate reference systems. For metric map projections the unit of measurement is restricted to this unit. For non-metric map projections the metric ellipsoid semi-major axis needs to be converted to the projected coordinate reference system linear unit before use in the formulas below. The relevant ellipsoid is obtained through the datum part of the projected coordinate reference system.

### Reversibility

Different formulas are required for forward and reverse map projection conversions: the forward formula cannot be used for the reverse conversion. However both forward and reverse formulas are explicitly given in the sections below as parts of a single conversion method. As such, map projection methods are described in the EPSG dataset as being reversible. Forward and reverse formulas for each conversion method use the projection parameters appropriate to that method with parameter values unchanged.

### Longitude 'wrap-around'

The formulas that follow assume longitudes are described using the range  $-180 \leq \lambda \leq +180$  degrees. If the area of interest crosses the  $180^\circ$  meridian and an alternative longitude range convention is being used, longitudes need to be converted to fall into this  $-180 \leq \lambda \leq +180$  degrees range. This may be achieved by applying the following:

If  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) \leq -180^\circ$  then  $\lambda = \lambda + 360^\circ$ . This may be required when  $\lambda_0 > 0^\circ$ .

If  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) \geq 180^\circ$  then  $\lambda = \lambda - 360^\circ$ . This may be required when  $\lambda_0 < 0^\circ$ .

In the formulas that follow the symbol  $\lambda_C$  or  $\lambda_F$  may be used rather than  $\lambda_0$ , but the same principle applies.

## **1.3.1 Lambert Conic Conformal**

For territories with limited latitudinal extent but wide longitudinal width it may sometimes be preferred to use a single projection rather than several bands or zones of a Transverse Mercator. The Lambert Conic Conformal may often be adopted in these circumstances. But if the latitudinal extent is also large there may still be a need to use two or more zones if the scale distortion at the extremities of the one zone becomes too large to be tolerable.

Conical projections with one standard parallel are normally considered to maintain the nominal map scale along the parallel of latitude which is the line of contact between the imagined cone and the ellipsoid. For a one standard parallel Lambert the natural origin of the projected coordinate reference system is the intersection of the standard parallel with the longitude of origin (central meridian). See Figure 1 below. To maintain the conformal property the spacing of the parallels is variable and increases with increasing distance from the standard parallel, while the meridians are all straight lines radiating from a point on the prolongation of the ellipsoid's minor axis.

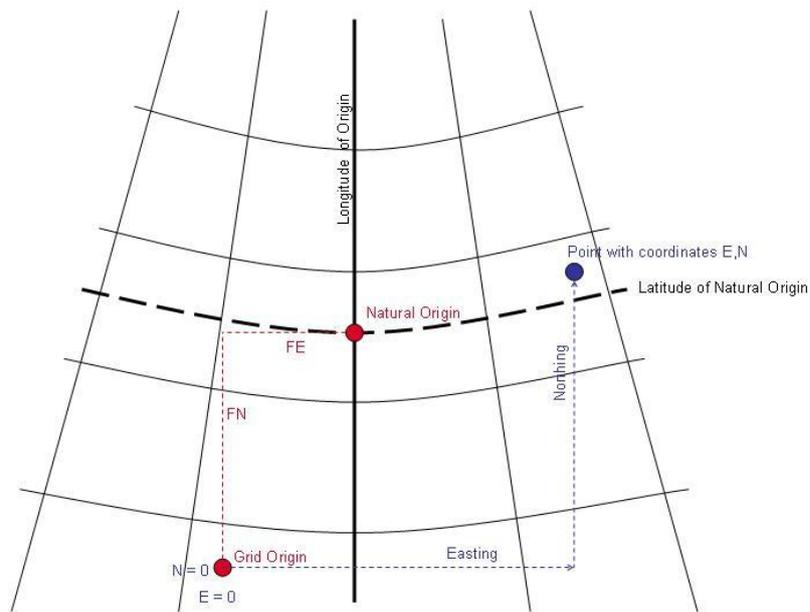


Figure 1 – Lambert Conic Conformal projection (1SP)

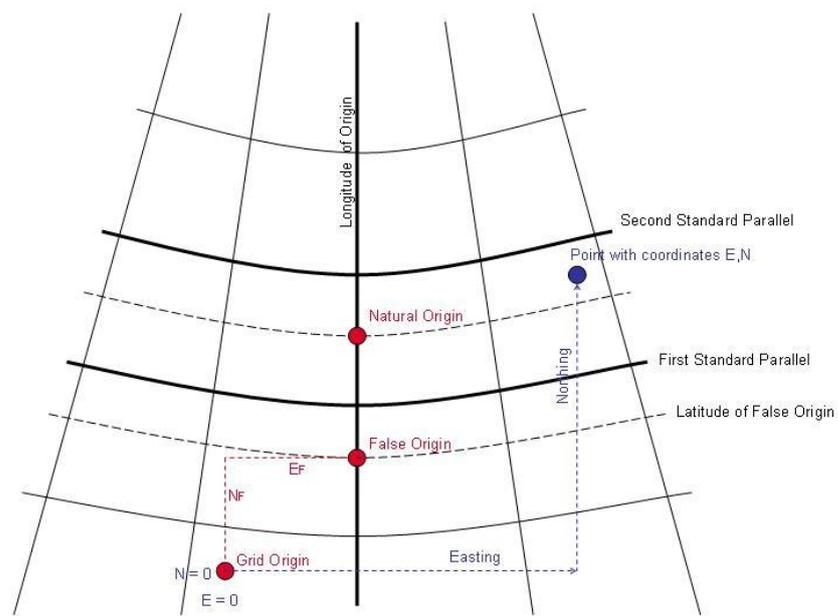


Figure 2 – Lambert Conic Conformal projection (2SP)

Sometimes however, although a one standard parallel Lambert is normally considered to have unity scale factor on the standard parallel, a scale factor of slightly less than unity is introduced on this parallel. This is a regular feature of the mapping of some former French territories and has the effect of making the scale factor unity on two other parallels either side of the standard parallel. The projection thus, strictly speaking, becomes a Lambert Conic Conformal projection with **two** standard parallels. From the one standard parallel and its scale factor it is possible to derive the equivalent two standard parallels and then treat the projection as a two standard parallel Lambert conical conformal, but this procedure is seldom adopted. Since the two parallels obtained in this way will generally not have integer values of degrees or degrees minutes and seconds it is instead usually preferred to select two specific parallels on which the scale factor is to be unity, as for several State Plane Coordinate systems in the United States (see figure 2 above).

The choice of the two standard parallels will usually be made according to the latitudinal extent of the area which it is wished to map, the parallels usually being chosen so that they each lie a proportion inboard of the north and south margins of the mapped area. Various schemes and formulas have been developed to make this selection such that the maximum scale distortion within the mapped area is minimised, e.g. Kavraisky in 1934, but whatever two standard parallels are adopted the formulas are the same.

EPSG recognises two variants of the Lambert Conic Conformal, the methods called Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) and Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP). These variants are similar to the Mercator and Polar Stereographic variants A and C respectively. (The Mercator and Polar Stereographic methods may be logically considered as end-member cases of the Lambert Conic Conformal where the apex of the cone is at infinity or a pole respectively, but the Lambert formulas should not be used for these cases as some functions break down).

### 1.3.1.1 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9802)

To derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\phi, \lambda$ ) the formulas for the Lambert Conic Conformal **two standard parallel case** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9802) are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } E &= E_F + r \sin \theta \\ \text{Northing, } N &= N_F + r_F - r \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

where  $m = \cos\phi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\phi)^{0.5}$  for  $m_1, \phi_1$ , and  $m_2, \phi_2$  where  $\phi_1$  and  $\phi_2$  are the latitudes of the standard parallels

$$t = \tan(\pi/4 - \phi/2) / [(1 - e \sin\phi) / (1 + e \sin\phi)]^{e/2} \text{ for } t_1, t_2, t_F \text{ and } t \text{ using } \phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_F \text{ and } \phi \text{ respectively}$$

$$n = (\ln m_1 - \ln m_2) / (\ln t_1 - \ln t_2)$$

$$F = m_1 / (n t_1^n)$$

$$r = a F t^n \quad \text{for } r_F \text{ and } r, \text{ where } r_F \text{ is the radius of the parallel of latitude of the false origin}$$

$$\theta = n(\lambda - \lambda_F)$$

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\phi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}\{t'[(1 - e \sin\phi)/(1 + e \sin\phi)]^{e/2}\}$$

$$\lambda = \theta'/n + \lambda_F$$

where

$$r' = \pm\{(E - E_F)^2 + [r_F - (N - N_F)]^2\}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

$$t' = (r' / (aF))^{1/n}$$

$$\theta' = \operatorname{atan} [(E - E_F) / (r_F - (N - N_F))]$$

and  $n, F$ , and  $r_F$  are derived as for the forward calculation.

Note that the formula for  $\phi$  requires iteration. First calculate  $t'$  and then a trial value for  $\phi$  using

$\varphi = \pi/2 - 2 \arctan t'$ . Then use the full equation for  $\varphi$  substituting the trial value into the right hand side of the equation. Thus derive a new value for  $\varphi$ . Iterate the process until  $\varphi$  does not change significantly. The solution should quickly converge, in 3 or 4 iterations.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: NAD27 / Texas South Central

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	a = 6378206.400 metres	=	20925832.16 US survey feet
		1/f = 294.97870		
	then	e = 0.08227185		e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00676866
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	27°50'00"N	=	0.48578331 rad
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	99°00'00"W	=	-1.72787596 rad
Latitude of 1st standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	28°23'00"N	=	0.49538262 rad
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	30°17'00"N	=	0.52854388 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	2000000.00		US survey feet
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	0.00		US survey feet

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	28°30'00.00"N	=	0.49741884 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	96°00'00.00"W	=	-1.67551608 rad

first gives :

$m_1$	=	0.88046050	$m_2$	=	0.86428642
t	=	0.59686306	$t_F$	=	0.60475101
$t_1$	=	0.59823957	$t_2$	=	0.57602212
n	=	0.48991263	F	=	2.31154807
r	=	37565039.86	$r_F$	=	37807441.20
$\theta$	=	0.02565177			

Then	Easting	E	=	2963503.91 US survey feet
	Northing	N	=	254759.80 US survey feet

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\theta'$	=	0.025651765
$t'$	=	0.59686306
$r'$	=	37565039.86

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	=	28°30'00.000"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	96°00'00.000"W

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5103 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

**1.3.1.2 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9801)

The formulas for the two standard parallel variant can be used for the Lambert Conic Conformal single standard parallel variant with minor modifications. Then

$$E = FE + r \sin\theta$$

$$N = FN + r_0 - r \cos\theta, \text{ using the natural origin rather than the false origin.}$$

where

$$n = \sin \varphi_0$$

$$r = a F t^n k_0 \quad \text{for } r_0, \text{ and } r$$

$t$  is found for  $t_0$ ,  $\varphi_0$  and  $t$ ,  $\varphi$  and  $m$ ,  $F$ , and  $\theta$  are found as for the two standard parallel variant.

The reverse formulas for  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are as for the two standard parallel variant above, with  $n$ ,  $F$  and  $r_0$  as before and

$$\theta' = \text{atan}\{(E - FE)/[r_0 - (N - FN)]\}$$

$$r' = \pm\{(E - FE)^2 + [r_0 - (N - FN)]^2\}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

$$t' = (r'/(a k_0 F))^{1/n}$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: JAD69 / Jamaica National Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	$a = 6378206.400$ metres	$1/f = 294.97870$
	then	$e = 0.08227185$	$e^2 = 0.00676866$

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	18°00'00"N	=	0.31415927 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	77°00'00"W	=	-1.34390352 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	1.000000		
False easting	FE	250000.00	metres	
False northing	FN	150000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	17°55'55.80"N	=	0.31297535 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	76°56'37.26"W	=	-1.34292061 rad

first gives

$m_0$	=	0.95136402	$t_0$	=	0.72806411
$F$	=	3.39591092	$n$	=	0.30901699
$R$	=	19643955.26	$r_0$	=	19636447.86
$\theta$	=	0.00030374	$t$	=	0.728965259

Then Easting	$E$	=	255966.58 metres
Northing	$N$	=	142493.51 metres

Reverse calculation for the same easting and northing first gives

$\theta'$	=	0.000303736
$t'$	=	0.728965259
$m_0$	=	0.95136402
$r'$	=	19643955.26

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	17°55'55.80"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	76°56'37.26"W

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5102 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 1.3.1.3 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP West Orientated)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9826)

In older mapping of Denmark and Greenland the Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) is used with axes positive north and **west**. To derive the projected Westing and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ) the formulas are as for the standard Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) variant above (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9801) except for:

$$W = FE - r * \sin \theta$$

In this formula the term FE retains its definition, i.e. in the Lambert Conic Conformal (West Orientated) method it increases the Westing value at the natural origin. In this method it is effectively false westing (FW).

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Westing and Northing values are as for the standard Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) variant except for:

$$\theta' = \text{atan}[(FE - W) / \{r_0 - (N - FN)\}]$$

$$r' = +/-[(FE - W)^2 + \{r_0 - (N - FN)\}^2]^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

### 1.3.1.4 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP Belgium)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9803)

In 1972, in order to retain approximately the same grid coordinates after a change of geodetic datum, a modified form of the two standard parallel case was introduced in Belgium. In 2000 this modification was replaced through use of the regular Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP) method with appropriately modified parameter values.

In the 1972 modification the formulas for the regular Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP) variant given above are used except for:

$$\text{Easting, } E = E_F + r \sin(\theta - a)$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = N_F + r_F - r \cos(\theta - a)$$

and for the reverse formulas

$$\lambda = [(\theta' + a)/n] + \lambda_F$$

where  $a = 29.2985$  seconds.

#### **Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Belge 1972 / Belge Lambert 72

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	International 1924	$a = 6378388$ metres	$1/f = 297.0$
	then	$e = 0.08199189$	$e^2 = 0.006722670$
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	90°00'00"N	= 1.57079633 rad
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	4°21'24.983"E	= 0.07604294 rad
Latitude of 1 <sup>st</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	49°50'00"N	= 0.86975574 rad
Latitude of 2 <sup>nd</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	51°10'00"N	= 0.89302680 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	150000.01	metres
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	5400088.44	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	50°40'46.461"N	=	0.88452540 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	5°48'26.533"E	=	0.10135773 rad

first gives :

$m_1$	=	0.64628304	$m_2$	=	0.62834001
$t$	=	0.35913403	$t_F$	=	0.00
$t_1$	=	0.36750382	$t_2$	=	0.35433583
$n$	=	0.77164219	$F$	=	1.81329763
$r$	=	5248041.03	$r_F$	=	0.00
$\theta$	=	0.01953396	$a$	=	0.00014204

Then Easting  $E = 251763.20$  metres  
 Northing  $N = 153034.13$  metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\theta'$	=	0.01939192
$t'$	=	0.35913403
$r'$	=	5248041.03

Then Latitude  $\varphi = 50^\circ 40' 46.461''$ N  
 Longitude  $\lambda = 5^\circ 48' 26.533''$ E

### 1.3.1.5 Lambert Conic Near-Conformal

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9817)

The Lambert Conformal Conic with one standard parallel formulas, as published by the Army Map Service, are still in use in several countries. The AMS uses series expansion formulas for ease of computation, as was normal before the electronic computer made such approximate methods unnecessary. Where the expansion series have been carried to enough terms the results are the same to the centimetre level as through the Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) formulas above. However in some countries the expansion formulas were truncated to the third order and the map projection is not fully conformal. The full formulas are used in Libya but from 1915 for France, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia and Syria the truncated formulas were used. In 1943 in Algeria and Tunisia, from 1948 in France, from 1953 in Morocco and from 1973 in Syria the truncated formulas were replaced with the full formulas.

To compute the Lambert Conic Near-Conformal the following formulas are used. First compute constants for the projection:

$$n = f / (2 - f)$$

$$A = 1 / (6 \rho_0 v_0) \text{ where } \rho_0 \text{ and } v_0 \text{ are computed as in table 3 in section 1.2 above.}$$

$$A' = a [ 1 - n + 5 (n^2 - n^3) / 4 + 81 (n^4 - n^5) / 64 ] * \pi / 180$$

$$B' = 3 a [ n - n^2 + 7 (n^3 - n^4) / 8 + 55 n^5 / 64 ] / 2$$

$$C' = 15 a [ n^2 - n^3 + 3 (n^4 - n^5) / 4 ] / 16$$

$$D' = 35 a [ n^3 - n^4 + 11 n^5 / 16 ] / 48$$

$$E' = 315 a [ n^4 - n^5 ] / 512$$

$$r_0 = k_0 v_0 / \tan \varphi_0$$

$$s_0 = A' \varphi_0 - B' \sin 2\varphi_0 + C' \sin 4\varphi_0 - D' \sin 6\varphi_0 + E' \sin 8\varphi_0$$

where in the first term  $\varphi_0$  is in degrees, in the other terms  $\varphi_0$  is in radians.

Then for the computation of easting and northing from latitude and longitude:

$$s = A' \varphi - B' \sin 2\varphi + C' \sin 4\varphi - D' \sin 6\varphi + E' \sin 8\varphi$$

where in the first term  $\varphi$  is in degrees, in the other terms  $\varphi$  is in radians.

$$m = [s - s_0]$$

$$\begin{aligned} M &= k_0 (m + Am^3) && \text{(see footnote}^2\text{)} \\ r &= r_0 - M \\ \theta &= (\lambda - \lambda_0) \sin \varphi_0 \\ \text{and} \\ E &= FE + r \sin \theta \\ N &= FN + M + r \sin \theta \tan (\theta / 2) \end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas for  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  from E and N are:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta' &= \text{atan} \{ (E - FE) / [r_0 - (N - FN)] \} \\ r' &= \pm \{ (E - FE)^2 + [r_0 - (N - FN)]^2 \}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } \varphi_0 \\ M' &= r_0 - r' \end{aligned}$$

If an exact solution is required, it is necessary to solve for m and  $\varphi$  using iteration of the two equations  
 Firstly:

$$m' = m' - [M' - k_0 m' - k_0 A (m')^3] / [-k_0 - 3 k_0 A (m')^2]$$

using M' for m' in the first iteration. This will usually converge (to within 1mm) in a single iteration.

Then

$$\varphi' = \varphi_0 + \{ m' + s_0 - [A' \varphi' (180/\pi) - B' \sin 2\varphi' + C' \sin 4\varphi' - D' \sin 6\varphi' + E' \sin 8\varphi'] \} / A' (\pi/180)$$

first using  $\varphi' = \varphi_0 + m'/A' (\pi/180)$ .

However the following non-iterative solution is accurate to better than 0.001" (3mm) within 5 degrees latitude of the projection origin and should suffice for most purposes:

$$\begin{aligned} m' &= M' - [M' - k_0 M' - k_0 A (M')^3] / [-k_0 - 3 k_0 A (M')^2] \\ \varphi' &= \varphi_0 + m'/A' (\pi/180) \\ s' &= A' \varphi' - B' \sin 2\varphi' + C' \sin 4\varphi' - D' \sin 6\varphi' + E' \sin 8\varphi' \\ &\quad \text{where in the first term } \varphi' \text{ is in degrees, in the other terms } \varphi' \text{ is in radians.} \\ ds' &= A'(180/\pi) - 2B' \cos 2\varphi' + 4C' \cos 4\varphi' - 6D' \cos 6\varphi' + 8E' \cos 8\varphi' \\ \varphi &= \varphi' - [(m' + s_0 - s') / (-ds')] \text{ radians} \end{aligned}$$

Then after solution of  $\varphi$  using either method above

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \theta' / \sin \varphi_0 \text{ where } \lambda_0 \text{ and } \lambda \text{ are in radians}$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Deir ez Zor / Levant Zone

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1880 (IGN)	a = 6378249.2 metres	1/f = 293.4660213
	then		n = 0.001706682563

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	34°39'00"N	=	0.604756586 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	37°21'00"E	=	0.651880476 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.99962560		
False easting	FE	300000.00	metres	
False northing	FN	300000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	37°31'17.625"N	=	0.654874806 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	34°08'11.291"E	=	0.595793792 rad

134134\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>2</sup> This is the term that is truncated to the third order. To be equivalent to the Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) (variant A) it would be  $M = k_0 (m + Am^3 + Bm^4 + Cm^5 + Dm^6)$ . B, C and D are not detailed here.

first gives :

A	=	$4.1067494 * 10^{-15}$	A'	=	111131.8633
B'	=	16300.64407	C'	=	17.38751
D'	=	0.02308	E'	=	0.000033
s <sub>0</sub>	=	3835482.233	r <sub>0</sub>	=	9235264.405
s	=	4154101.458	m	=	318619.225
M	=	318632.72	r	=	8916631.685
θ	=	-0.03188875			

Then Easting	E	=	15707.96 metres	(c.f. E = 15708.00 using full formulas)
Northing	N	=	623165.96 metres	(c.f. N = 623167.20 using full formulas)

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

θ'	=	-0.031888749
r'	=	8916631.685
M'	=	318632.717

Using the non-iterative solution:

m'	=	318619.222
φ'	=	0.654795830
s'	=	4153599.259
ds'	=	6358907.456

Then Latitude	φ	=	0.654874806 rad	=	37°31'17.625"N
Longitude	λ	=	0.595793792 rad	=	34°08'11.291"E

### 1.3.2 Krovak

The normal case of the Lambert Conic Conformal is for the axis of the cone to be coincident with the minor axis of the ellipsoid, that is the axis of the cone is normal to the ellipsoid at a geographic pole. For the Oblique Conic Conformal the axis of the cone is normal to the ellipsoid at a defined location and its extension cuts the ellipsoid minor axis at a defined angle. The map projection method is similar in principle to the Oblique Mercator (see section 1.3.6). It is used in the Czech Republic and Slovakia under the name 'Krovak' projection, where like the Laborde oblique cylindrical projection in Madagascar (section 1.3.6.2) the rotation to north is made in spherical rather than plane coordinates. The geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid are first reduced to conformal coordinates on the conformal (Gaussian) sphere. These spherical coordinates are then rotated to north and the rotated spherical coordinates then projected onto the oblique cone and converted to grid coordinates. The pseudo standard parallel is defined on the conformal sphere after its rotation. It is then the parallel on this sphere at which the map projection is true to scale; on the ellipsoid it maps as a complex curve. A scale factor may be applied to the map projection to increase the useful area of coverage.

Four variants of the classical Krovak method developed in 1922 are recognise:

- i) For the Czech Republic and Slovakia the original 1922 method results in coordinates incrementing to the south and west.
- ii) A 21<sup>st</sup> century modification to this causes the coordinate system axes to increment to the east and north, making the system more readily incorporated in GIS systems.
- iii) A second modification to the original method for distortions in the surveying network.
- iv) A third modification applies both of the first and second modifications, that is it compensates for surveying network distortions and also results in coordinates for the Czech Republic and Slovakia incrementing to the east and north.

### 1.3.2.1 **Krovak**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9819)

The defining parameters for the Krovak method are:

- $\varphi_C$  = latitude of projection centre, the latitude of the point used as reference for the calculation of the Gaussian conformal sphere
- $\lambda_O$  = longitude of origin
- $\alpha_C$  = rotation in plane of meridian of origin of the conformal coordinates  
= co-latitude of the cone axis at its point of intersection with the conformal sphere
- $\varphi_P$  = latitude of pseudo standard parallel
- $k_P$  = scale factor on pseudo standard parallel
- FE = False Easting
- FN = False Northing

For the projection devised by Krovak in 1922 for Czechoslovakia the axes are positive south (X) and west (Y). The symbols FE and FN represent the westing and southing coordinates at the grid natural origin. This is at the intersection of the cone axis with the surface of the conformal sphere.

From these the following constants for the projection may be calculated:

- A =  $a (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [1 - e^2 \sin^2(\varphi_C)]$
- B =  $\{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5}$
- $\gamma_O$  =  $\text{asin} [\sin(\varphi_C) / B]$
- $t_O$  =  $\tan(\pi / 4 + \gamma_O / 2) \cdot [(1 + e \sin(\varphi_C)) / (1 - e \sin(\varphi_C))]^{e.B/2} / [\tan(\pi / 4 + \varphi_C / 2)]^B$
- n =  $\sin(\varphi_P)$
- $r_O$  =  $k_P A / \tan(\varphi_P)$

To derive the projected Southing and Westing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) the formulas for the Krovak are:

- U =  $2 (\text{atan} \{ t_O \tan^B(\varphi / 2 + \pi / 4) / [(1 + e \sin(\varphi)) / (1 - e \sin(\varphi))]^{e.B/2} \} - \pi / 4)$
- V =  $B (\lambda_O - \lambda)$  where  $\lambda_O$  and  $\lambda$  must both be referenced to the same prime meridian,
- T =  $\text{asin} [\cos(\alpha_C) \sin(U) + \sin(\alpha_C) \cos(U) \cos(V)]$
- D =  $\text{asin} [\cos(U) \sin(V) / \cos(T)]$
- $\theta$  =  $n D$
- r =  $r_O \tan^n(\pi / 4 + \varphi_P / 2) / \tan^n(T / 2 + \pi / 4)$
- $X_p$  =  $r \cos \theta$
- $Y_p$  =  $r \sin \theta$

Then

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Southing} & X = X_p + FN \\ \text{Westing} & Y = Y_p + FE \end{array}$$

Note also that the formula for D is satisfactory for the normal use of the projection within the pseudo-longitude range on the conformal sphere of  $\pm 90$  degrees from the central line of the projection. Should there be a need to exceed this range (which is not necessary for application in the Czech and Slovak Republics) then for the calculation of D use:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(D) &= \cos(U) * \sin(V) / \cos(T) \\ \cos(D) &= \{[\cos(\alpha_C) * \sin(T) - \sin(U)] / [\sin(\alpha_C) * \cos(T)]\} \\ D &= \text{atan2}(\sin(D), \cos(D)) \end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Southing (X) and Westing (Y)

values are:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{p'} &= \text{Southing} - \text{FN} \\ Y_{p'} &= \text{Westing} - \text{FE} \\ r' &= [(X_{p'})^2 + (Y_{p'})^2]^{0.5} \\ \theta' &= \text{atan}(Y_{p'} / X_{p'}) \\ D' &= \theta' / \sin(\phi_P) \\ T' &= 2\{\text{atan}[(r_0 / r')^{1/n} \tan(\pi / 4 + \phi_P / 2)] - \pi / 4\} \\ U' &= \text{asin}[\cos(\alpha_C) \sin(T') - \sin(\alpha_C) \cos(T') \cos(D')] \\ V' &= \text{asin}[\cos(T') \sin(D') / \cos(U')] \end{aligned}$$

Latitude  $\phi$  is found by iteration using  $U'$  as the value for  $\phi_{j-1}$  in the first iteration

$$\phi_j = 2 \left( \text{atan} \left\{ t_0^{-1/B} \tan^{1/B} \left( U'/2 + \pi / 4 \right) \left[ (1 + e \sin(\phi_{j-1})) / (1 - e \sin(\phi_{j-1})) \right]^{e/2} \right\} - \pi / 4 \right)$$

3 iterations will usually suffice. Then:

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 - V' / B \quad \text{where } \lambda \text{ is referenced to the same prime meridian as } \lambda_0.$$

### Example

For Geographic CRS *S-JTSK* and Projected CRS *S-JTSK (Ferro) / Krovak*

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Bessel 1841	a = 6377397.155metres	1/f = 299.15281
	then	e = 0.081696831	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006674372

Latitude of projection centre	$\phi_C$	49°30'00"N	= 0.863937979 rad
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_0$	42°30'00"E of Ferro	= 0.741764932 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	30°17'17.303"	= 0.528627762 rad
Latitude of pseudo standard parallel	$\phi_P$	78°30'00"N	= 1.370083463 rad
Scale factor on pseudo standard parallel	$k_P$	0.9999	
False Easting	FE	0.00	metres
False Northing	FN	0.00	metres

Projection constants:

A	= 6380703.611	B	= 1.000597498
$\gamma_0$	= 0.863239103	$t_0$	= 1.003419164
n	= 0.979924705	$r_0$	= 1298039.005

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\phi$	= 50°12'32.442"N	= 0.876312568 rad
Longitude	$\lambda_G$	= 16°50'59.179"E of Greenwich	

Firstly, because the projection definition includes longitudes referenced to the Ferro meridian, the longitude of the point needs to be transformed to be referenced to the Ferro meridian<sup>3</sup> using the Longitude Rotation method (EPSG method code 9601, described in section 2.4.1).

$$\text{Longitude of point } \lambda_G = 16^\circ 50' 59.179'' \text{E of Greenwich}$$

134134\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>3</sup> An alternative approach would be to define the projection with longitude of origin value of 24°50'E referenced to the Greenwich meridian. This approach would eliminate the need to transform the longitude of every point from Greenwich to Ferro before conversion, which arguably is more practical. It is not formerly documented here because the published projection definition is referenced to Ferro.

when referenced to  
Greenwich meridian

Longitude of Ferro = 17°40'00" west of Greenwich

and then  
 Longitude of point when referenced to Ferro meridian  $\lambda$  = 34°30'59.179"E of Ferro = 0.602425500 rad

Then the forward calculation first gives:

U = 0.875596951  
 V = 0.139422687  
 T = 1.386275051  
 D = 0.506554626  
 $\theta$  = 0.496385392  
 r = 1194731.005  
 Xp = 1050538.634  
 Yp = 568990.995

and Southing X = 1050538.63 metres  
 Westing Y = 568991.00 metres

Note that in the Czech Republic and Slovakia southing (X) values for the Krovak grid are greater than 900000m and westing (Y) values are less than 900000m.

Reverse calculation for the same Southing and Westing gives

Xp' = 1050538.634  
 Yp' = 568990.995  
 r' = 1194731.005  
 $\theta'$  = 0.496385392  
 D' = 0.506554626  
 T' = 1.386275051  
 U' = 0.875596951  
 V' = 0.139422687

Then by iteration

$\phi_1$  = 0.876310603 rad       $\phi_2$  = 0.876312562 rad       $\phi_3$  = 0.876312568 rad  
 and

Latitude  $\phi$  = 0.876312568 rad = 50°12'32.442"N

Longitude of point when referenced to Ferro meridian  $\lambda$  = 0.602425500 rad = 34°30'59.179"E of Ferro

Then using the Longitude Rotation method (EPSG method code 9601, described in section 2.4.1)

Longitude of Ferro = 17°40'00" west of Greenwich

Then  
 Longitude of point when referenced to Greenwich meridian  $\lambda_G$  = 16°50'59.179"E of Greenwich

### 1.3.2.2 Krovak (North Orientated)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1041)

Having axes positive south and west, as is the case with the projection defined by Krovak in 1922, causes problems in some GIS systems. To resolve this problem the Czech and Slovak authorities modified the Krovak projection method to have a coordinate system with axes incrementing to the east and north.

To derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\phi, \lambda$ ) the formulas are the same as those for the Krovak (south-orientated) method (EPSG method code 9819) described in the previous section as far as the calculation of Southing and Westing. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting}_{\text{Krovak (North Orientated)}} & \quad X & = & \quad - \text{Westing}_{\text{Krovak}} \\ \text{Northing}_{\text{Krovak (North Orientated)}} & \quad Y & = & \quad - \text{Southing}_{\text{Krovak}} \end{aligned}$$

Note that in addition to changing the sign of the coordinate values, the axes abbreviations X and Y are transposed from south to east and from west to north respectively. Note also that for this north-orientated variant, although the grid coordinates increment to the east and north their numerical values are negative in the Czech Republic and Slovakia area. For the north-orientated grid easting (X) values are greater than -900000m i.e. between -900000m and -400000m) and northing (Y) values are less than -900000m (between -900000m and -1400000m).

For the reverse conversion to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting (X) and Northing (Y) values, first:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Southing}_{\text{Krovak}} & = - \text{Northing}_{\text{Krovak (North Orientated)}} \\ \text{Westing}_{\text{Krovak}} & = - \text{Easting}_{\text{Krovak (North Orientated)}} \end{aligned}$$

after which latitude and longitude are derived as described for the south-orientated Krovak method in the previous section.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: S-JTSK (Ferro) / Krovak East North

Forward calculation for the same point as in the south-orientated case in section 1.3.2.1 above:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \phi & = 50^{\circ}12'32.442''\text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_G & = 34^{\circ}30'59.179''\text{E of Ferro} \end{aligned}$$

proceeds as in the south-orientated case as far as the calculation of Southing and Westing:

$$\begin{aligned} U & = 0.875596951 \\ V & = 0.139422687 \\ T & = 1.386275051 \\ D & = 0.506554626 \\ \theta & = 0.496385392 \\ r & = 1194731.005 \\ X_p & = 1050538.634 \\ Y_p & = 568990.995 \\ \text{Southing} & = 1050538.634 \\ \text{Westing} & = 568990.995 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\text{Easting } X = -568991.00 \text{ metres}$$

$$\text{Northing } Y = -1050538.63 \text{ metres}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (–568990.995, –1050538.634) first gives

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Southing} &= 1050538.634 \\ \text{Westing} &= 568990.995 \end{aligned}$$

then proceeds as in the calculation for the (south-orientated) Krovak method to give

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi &= 50^{\circ}12'32.442''\text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 34^{\circ}30'59.179''\text{E of Ferro} \end{aligned}$$

### 1.3.2.3 **Krovak Modified**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1042)

After the initial introduction of the S-JTSK (Ferro) / Krovak projected CRS, further geodetic measurements were observed and calculations made in the projected CRS resulted in changed grid coordinate values. The relationship through the Krovak projection between the original S-JTSK geographic CRS coordinates and the new projected CRS coordinates was no longer exact. In 2009 the Czech authorities introduced a modification which modelled the survey network distortions.

To derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) the formulas for the Krovak Modified method are the same as those for the original (unmodified, south-orientated) Krovak method described in section 1.3.2.1 as far as the calculation of  $X_p$  and  $Y_p$ .

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} X_r &= X_p - X_0 \\ Y_r &= Y_p - Y_0 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= C_1 + C_3 \cdot X_r - C_4 \cdot Y_r - 2 \cdot C_6 \cdot X_r \cdot Y_r + C_5 \cdot (X_r^2 - Y_r^2) + C_7 \cdot X_r \cdot (X_r^2 - 3 \cdot Y_r^2) \\ &\quad - C_8 \cdot Y_r \cdot (3 \cdot X_r^2 - Y_r^2) + 4 \cdot C_9 \cdot X_r \cdot Y_r \cdot (X_r^2 - Y_r^2) + C_{10} \cdot (X_r^4 + Y_r^4 - 6 \cdot X_r^2 \cdot Y_r^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dY &= C_2 + C_3 \cdot Y_r + C_4 \cdot X_r + 2 \cdot C_5 \cdot X_r \cdot Y_r + C_6 \cdot (X_r^2 - Y_r^2) + C_8 \cdot X_r \cdot (X_r^2 - 3 \cdot Y_r^2) \\ &\quad + C_7 \cdot Y_r \cdot (3 \cdot X_r^2 - Y_r^2) - 4 \cdot C_{10} \cdot X_r \cdot Y_r \cdot (X_r^2 - Y_r^2) + C_9 \cdot (X_r^4 + Y_r^4 - 6 \cdot X_r^2 \cdot Y_r^2) \end{aligned}$$

where  $X_0$ ,  $Y_0$  and  $C_1$  through  $C_{10}$  are additional defining parameters for the modified method.

Finally:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Southing } X &= X_p - dX + FN \\ \text{Westing } Y &= Y_p - dY + FE \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse conversion to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Southing (X) and Westing (Y) values:

$$\begin{aligned} X_r' &= (\text{Southing} - FN) - X_0 \\ Y_r' &= (\text{Westing} - FE) - Y_0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dX' &= C_1 + C_3 \cdot X_r' - C_4 \cdot Y_r' - 2 \cdot C_6 \cdot X_r' \cdot Y_r' + C_5 \cdot (X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) + C_7 \cdot X_r' \cdot (X_r'^2 - 3 \cdot Y_r'^2) \\ &\quad - C_8 \cdot Y_r' \cdot (3 \cdot X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) + 4 \cdot C_9 \cdot X_r' \cdot Y_r' \cdot (X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) + C_{10} \cdot (X_r'^4 + Y_r'^4 - 6 \cdot X_r'^2 \cdot Y_r'^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dY' &= C_2 + C_3 \cdot Y_r' + C_4 \cdot X_r' + 2 \cdot C_5 \cdot X_r' \cdot Y_r' + C_6 \cdot (X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) + C_8 \cdot X_r' \cdot (X_r'^2 - 3 \cdot Y_r'^2) \\ &\quad + C_7 \cdot Y_r' \cdot (3 \cdot X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) - 4 \cdot C_{10} \cdot X_r' \cdot Y_r' \cdot (X_r'^2 - Y_r'^2) + C_9 \cdot (X_r'^4 + Y_r'^4 - 6 \cdot X_r'^2 \cdot Y_r'^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$X_p' = (\text{Southing} - FN) + dX'$$

$$Yp' = (\text{Westing} - \text{FE}) + dY'$$

After which latitude and longitude are derived from  $Xp'$  and  $Yp'$  as described for the classic Krovak method (EPSG method code 9819) described in section.1.3.2.1 above.

It may be noted that the calculation of  $dX$  and  $dY$  in the forward formulas (and  $dX'$  and  $dY'$  in the reverse formulas) is a reversible polynomial of degree 4 – see section 2.3.1.1. The coefficients  $C_1$  through  $C_{10}$  can be mapped to the coefficients  $A_0$  through  $A_{14}$  and  $B_0$  through  $B_{14}$  given in section 2.3.1.1 as:

$A_0 = C_1$	$A_7 = -3.C_8$	$B_0 = C_2$	$B_7 = 3.C_7$
$A_1 = C_3$	$A_8 = -3.C_7$	$B_1 = C_4$	$B_8 = -3.C_8$
$A_2 = -C_4$	$A_9 = C_8$	$B_2 = C_3$	$B_9 = -C_7$
$A_3 = C_5$	$A_{10} = C_{10}$	$B_3 = C_6$	$B_{10} = C_9$
$A_4 = -2.C_6$	$A_{11} = 4.C_9$	$B_4 = 2.C_5$	$B_{11} = -4.C_{10}$
$A_5 = -C_5$	$A_{12} = -6.C_{10}$	$B_5 = -C_6$	$B_{12} = -6.C_9$
$A_6 = C_7$	$A_{13} = -4.C_9$	$B_6 = C_8$	$B_{13} = 4.C_{10}$
	$A_{14} = C_{10}$		$B_{14} = C_9$

and the scaling parameter  $m$  is unity. The polynomial coefficient values have been empirically derived so in principle this is a transformation which induces inaccuracy into the output coordinates. However the polynomial is decreed to be exact and for practical purposes the Krovak Modified method is treated as a map projection. The embedding of this polynomial means that the Krovak Modified method is not truly conformal.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: S-JTSK/05 (Ferro) / Modified Krovak

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Bessel 1841	$a = 6377397.155\text{metres}$	$1/f = 299.15281$
	then	$e = 0.081696831$	$e^2 = 0.006674372$

Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	49°30'00"N	= 0.863937979 rad
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	42°30'00"E of Ferro	
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	30°17'17.3031"	
Latitude of pseudo standard parallel	$\varphi_P$	78°30'00"N	
Scale factor on pseudo standard parallel	$k_P$	0.9999	
False Easting	FE	5000000.00	metres
False Northing	FN	5000000.00	metres
Ordinate 1 of evaluation point	$X_O$	1089000.00	metres
Ordinate 2 of evaluation point	$Y_O$	654000.00	metres
$C_1$		2.946529277E-02	
$C_2$		2.515965696E-02	
$C_3$		1.193845912E-07	
$C_4$		-4.668270147E-07	
$C_5$		9.233980362E-12	
$C_6$		1.523735715E-12	
$C_7$		1.696780024E-18	
$C_8$		4.408314235E-18	
$C_9$		-8.331083518E-24	
$C_{10}$		-3.689471323E-24	

Forward calculation for the same point as in the Krovak (south-orientated) method example:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 50°12'32.442"N
Longitude	$\lambda_G$	= 34°30'59.179"E of Ferro

proceeds as in the original Krovak method in section 1.3.2.1 above as far as the calculation of Xp and Yp.  
 Then:

$$\begin{aligned} X_r &= -38461.366 \\ Y_r &= -85009.005 \\ dX &= -0.077 \\ dY &= 0.088 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Southing } X &= 6050538.71 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Westing } Y &= 5568990.91 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse calculation of these coordinates:

$$\begin{array}{ll} X_{r'} &= -38461.289 & Y_{r'} &= -85009.093 \\ dX' &= -0.077 & dY' &= 0.088 \\ X_{p'} &= 1050538.634 & Y_{p'} &= 568990.995 \\ r' &= 1194731.005 & \theta' &= 0.496385392 \\ D' &= 0.506554626 & S' &= 1.386275051 \\ U' &= 0.875596951 & V' &= 0.139422687 \end{array}$$

Then by iteration

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1 &= 0.876310603 \text{ rad} & \phi_2 &= 0.876312562 \text{ rad} & \phi_3 &= 0.876312568 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Latitude } \phi &= 0.876312568 \text{ rad} & &= 50^\circ 12' 32.442'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 0.602425500 \text{ rad} & &= 34^\circ 30' 59.179'' \text{E of Ferro} \end{aligned}$$

**1.3.2.4 Krovak Modified (North Orientated)**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1043)

A further modification of the Krovak method is to apply the axis orientation change as described in section 1.3.2.2 above to the Krovak Modified method described in the previous section, 1.3.2.3. The calculations for Southing and Westing is as for the Krovak Modified method (EPSG method code 1042) described in the previous section, but then:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting}_{\text{Krovak Modified (North Orientated)}} & X &= & - \text{Westing}_{\text{Krovak Modified}} \\ \text{Northing}_{\text{Krovak Modified (North Orientated)}} & Y &= & - \text{Southing}_{\text{Krovak Modified}} \end{aligned}$$

As with the Krovak (North Orientated) projection described in section 1.3.2.2, the axis abbreviations X and Y are transposed from south to east and from west to north respectively.

For the reverse calculation of easting and northing to latitude and longitude,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Southing}_{\text{Krovak Modified}} &= & - \text{Northing}_{\text{Krovak Modified (North Orientated)}} \\ \text{Westing}_{\text{Krovak Modified}} &= & - \text{Easting}_{\text{Krovak Modified (North Orientated)}} \end{aligned}$$

and the calculation then follows that of the Krovak Modified method given in section 1.3.2.3.

**Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: S-JTSK/05 (Ferro) / Modified Krovak East North

Forward calculation for the same point as in the Krovak method in section 1.3.2.1 above:

Latitude  $\varphi$  = 50°12'32.442"N  
 Longitude  $\lambda_G$  = 34°30'59.179"E of Ferro

proceeds as in the example for the Krovak Modified method described in the previous section as far as the calculation of Southing and Westing.

Then Easting X = -5568990.91 metres  
 Northing Y = -6050538.71 metres

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing first gives

Southing = 6050538.71  
 Westing = 5568990.91

and then continues as in the calculation for the Krovak Modified method in section 1.3.2.3 to give

Latitude  $\varphi$  = 50°12'32.442"N  
 Longitude  $\lambda_G$  = 34°30'59.179"E of Ferro

### 1.3.3 Mercator

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method codes 9804 and 9805)

The Mercator map projection is a special limiting case of the Lambert Conic Conformal map projection with the equator as the single standard parallel. All other parallels of latitude are straight lines and the meridians are also straight lines at right angles to the equator, equally spaced. It is the basis for the transverse and oblique forms of the projection. It is little used for land mapping purposes but is in almost universal use for navigation charts. As well as being conformal, it has the particular property that straight lines drawn on it are lines of constant bearing. Thus navigators may derive their course from the angle the straight course line makes with the meridians.

Three variants of the Mercator projection are recognised, differentiated by the parameters used in the projection definition:

- Variant A, also known as Mercator (1SP). The projection is defined with the equator as the single standard parallel, with scale factor on the equator also defined. False grid coordinates are applied at the natural origin of the projection, the intersection of the equator and the longitude of origin. See figure 3 below. In the few cases in which the Mercator projection is used for terrestrial applications or land mapping, such as in Indonesia prior to the introduction of the Universal Transverse Mercator, this is the normal method of definition.
- Variant B, defined through the latitude of two parallels equidistant either side of the equator upon which the grid scale is true. False grid coordinates are applied at the natural origin of the projection, the intersection of the equator and the longitude of origin. See figure 3 below. Variants A and B are alternative ways of defining the same projection – coordinates of a point will have the same values regardless of whether the definition is variant A or variant B.
- Variant C, Mercator (2SP) defined through the latitude of two parallels equidistant either side of the equator upon which the grid scale is true, as in variant (B). However in variant C false grid coordinates are applied at a point other than the natural origin of the projection, called the false origin. See figure 4 below. If the values of the standard parallels and false grid coordinates are the same, coordinates for variant C will differ from those for variant B.

Variants A and B are special cases of the more general variant C.

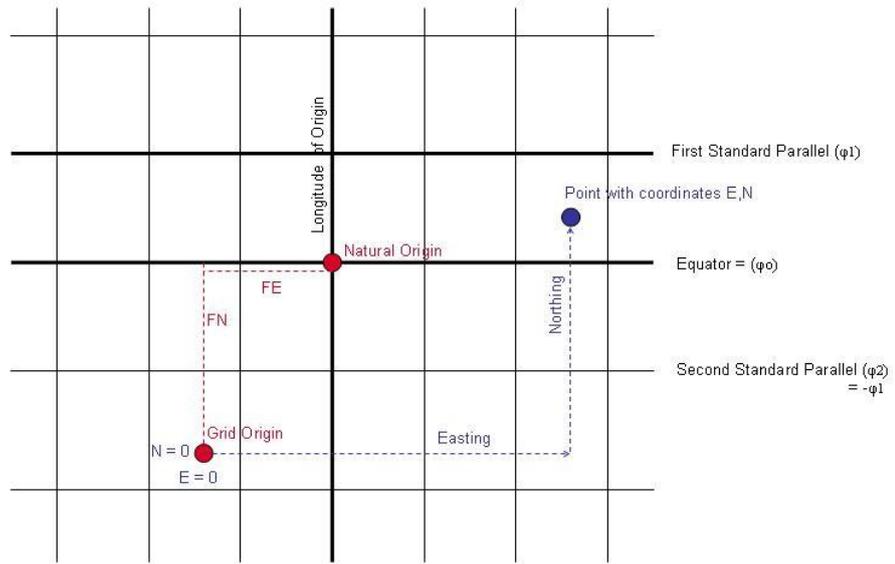


Figure 3 – Mercator variants A and B

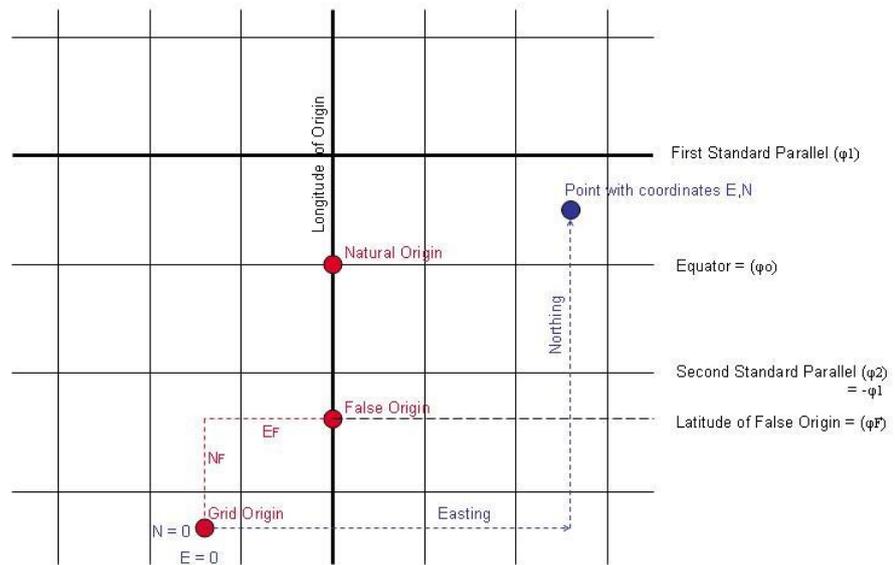


Figure 4 – Mercator variant C

The defining parameters for the three Mercator variants are summarised in the following table:

	Method		
	<u>1 SP</u>	<u>2 SPs</u>	
	<u>Variant A</u>	<u>Variant B</u>	<u>Variant C</u>
EPSG Dataset coordinate operation method code:	<u>9804</u>	<u>9805</u>	<u>xxxx</u>
<u>Parameter</u>			
Latitude of natural origin ( $\phi_0$ )	(note 1)		
Scale at natural origin ( $k_0$ )	x		
Latitude of standard parallel ( $\phi_1$ )		(note 2)	(note 2)
Latitude of false origin ( $\phi_F$ )			x
Longitude of natural origin ( $\lambda_0$ )	x	x	x
False easting (easting at natural origin) (FE)	x	x	
False northing (northing at natural origin) (FN)	x	x	
Easting at false origin ( $E_F$ )			x
Northing at false origin ( $N_F$ )			x

Notes:

1. In the formulas that follow the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\phi_0$ ) is not used. However for the Mercator variant A (1SP) method, for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.
2. For each of variants B and C (the 2SP cases), there is a pair of standard parallels with equal latitude value but different signs. Only one needs to be defined.

Several equations are common between the variants.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

For variants B and C, the two standard parallel cases with false coordinates defined at the natural origin of the projection or the false origin respectively, first  $k_0$ , the scale factor at the equator or natural origin, is calculated from

$$k_0 = \cos\phi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\phi_1)^{0.5}$$

where  $\phi_1$  is the absolute value of the first standard parallel (i.e. positive).

Then for variant C only:

$$M = a k_0 \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \phi_F/2)[(1 - \operatorname{esin}\phi_F)/(1 + \operatorname{esin}\phi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

Then, for both of variants A and B,

$$E = FE + a k_0 (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = FN + a k_0 \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \phi/2)[(1 - \operatorname{esin}\phi)/(1 + \operatorname{esin}\phi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

where symbols are as listed above and logarithms are natural.

but for variant C:

$$E = E_F + a k_0 (\lambda - \lambda_F)$$

$$N = (N_F - M) + a k_0 \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \phi/2)[(1 - \operatorname{esin}\phi)/(1 + \operatorname{esin}\phi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude from E and N values are:

$$\begin{aligned} \phi = \chi + & (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi) \\ & + (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi) \\ & + (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t$

and for variants A and B

$$t = B^{(FN-N)/(a \cdot k_O)}$$

B = base of the natural logarithm, 2.7182818...

and for the 2 SP variant B,  $k_O$  is calculated as for the forward transformation above.

but for variant C

$$t = B^{(NF-M-N)/(a \cdot k_O)}$$

where, B is base of the natural logarithm and M and  $k_O$  are calculated as for the forward transformation.

Then for variants A and B:

$$\lambda = [(E - FE)/ak_O] + \lambda_O$$

but for variant C

$$\lambda = [(E - E_F)/ak_O] + \lambda_F$$

### Examples:

#### 1. Mercator (variant A)

Also known as Mercator (1SP)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9804)

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Makassar / NEIEZ

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: Bessel 1841    a = 6377397.155metres    1/f = 299.15281  
 then    e = 0.081696831

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_O$	0°00'00"N	=	0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_O$	110°00'00"E	=	1.91986218 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_O$	0.997		
False easting	FE	3900000.00	metres	
False northing	FN	900000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi$  = 3°00'00.00"S = -0.05235988 rad  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 120°00'00.00"E = 2.09439510 rad

gives Easting E = 5009726.58 metres  
 Northing N = 569150.82 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

t = 1.0534121  
 $\chi$  = -0.0520110

Then Latitude  $\varphi$  = 3°00'00.000"S  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 120°00'00.000"E

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5111 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

## 2. Mercator variant B

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9805)

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Pulkovo 1942 / Mercator Caspian Sea

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Krassowsky 1940	a = 6378245.0 metres	1/f = 298.3
	then	e = 0.08181333	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00669342

Latitude of 1 <sup>st</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	42°00'00"N	=	0.73303829 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	51°00'00"E	=	0.89011792 rad
False easting	FE	0.00	metres	
False northing	FN	0.00	metres	

then scale factor at natural origin  $k_0$  (at latitude of natural origin at 0°N) = 0.744260894.

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°00'00.00"N	=	0.9250245 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	53°00'00.00"E	=	0.9250245 rad

gives	Easting	E	=	165704.29 metres
	Northing	N	=	5171848.07 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

t	=	0.336391288
$\chi$	=	0.921795958

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°00'00.000"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	53°00'00.000"E

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5112 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

## 3. Mercator variant C

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1044)

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Pulkovo 1942 / Mercator Caspian Sea

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Krassowsky 1940	a = 6378245.0 metres	1/f = 298.3
	then	e = 0.08181333	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00669342

Latitude of 1 <sup>st</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	42°00'00"N	=	0.73303829 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_F$	51°00'00"E	=	0.89011792 rad
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	42°00'00"N	=	0.73303829 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	0.00	metres	
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	0.00	metres	

First calculate projection constants:

$k_0 = 0.744260894$

$$M = 3819897.85$$

Forward calculation for:

$$\begin{array}{lclcl} \text{Latitude } \varphi & = & 53^{\circ}00'00.00''\text{N} & = & 0.9250245 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda & = & 53^{\circ}00'00.00''\text{E} & = & 0.9250245 \text{ rad} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lclcl} \text{gives Easting } E & = & 165704.29 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Northing } N & = & 1351950.22 \text{ metres} \end{array}$$

(Note the significant difference in northings from the variant B example).

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$$\begin{array}{lcl} t & = & 0.336391288 \\ \chi & = & 0.921795958 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lclcl} \text{Then Latitude } \varphi & = & 53^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda & = & 53^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} \end{array}$$

### 1.3.3.1 Mercator (Spherical)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1026)

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates from spherical latitude  $\varphi$  and longitude  $\lambda$  are:

$$\begin{array}{l} E = FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N = FN + R \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2)] \end{array}$$

where  $\lambda_0$  is the longitude of natural origin and FE and FN are false easting and false nothing.

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the conformal sphere at the projection origin at latitude  $\varphi_0$  using the formula for  $R_C$  given in section 1.2, table 3. Note however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the projection properties are not preserved.

If latitude  $\varphi = 90^{\circ}$ , N is infinite. The above formula for N will fail near to the pole, and should not be used poleward of  $88^{\circ}$ .

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude on the sphere from E and N values are:

$$\begin{array}{l} D = -(N - FN) / R = (FN - N) / R \\ \varphi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(e^D) \text{ where } e = \text{base of natural logarithms, } 2.7182818\dots \\ \lambda = [(E - FE)/R] + \lambda_0 \end{array}$$

Note that in these formulas, the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\varphi_0$ ) is not used. However for the Mercator (Spherical) method, for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: World Spherical Mercator

Parameters:

Sphere:		R = 6371007.0 metres		
Latitude of natural origin	$\phi_0$	0°00'00.000"N	=	0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	0°00'00.000"E	=	0.0 rad
False easting	FE	0.00		metres
False northing	FN	0.00		metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\phi$	=	24°22'54.433"N	=	0.425542460 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	100°20'00.000"W	=	-1.751147016 rad

whence

$$E = -11\,156\,569.90 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 2\,796\,869.94 \text{ m}$$

Reverse calculation for the same point (-11 156 569.90 m E, 2 796 869.94m N) first gives:

$$D = -0.438999665$$

Then	Latitude	$\phi$	=	0.425542460 rad	=	24°22'54.433"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	-1.751147016 rad	=	100°20'00.000"W

#### 1.3.3.2 Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1024)

This method is utilised by some popular web mapping and visualisation applications. It applies standard Mercator (Spherical) formulas (section 1.3.3.1 above) to ellipsoidal coordinates and the sphere radius is taken to be the semi-major axis of the ellipsoid. This approach only approximates to the more rigorous application of ellipsoidal formulas to ellipsoidal coordinates (as given in EPSG dataset coordinate operation method codes 9804 and 9805 in section 1.3.3 above). Unlike either the spherical or ellipsoidal Mercator projection methods, this method is not conformal: scale factor varies as a function of azimuth, which creates angular distortion. Despite angular distortion there is no convergence in the meridian.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates from ellipsoidal latitude  $\phi$  and longitude  $\lambda$  first derive the radius of the sphere (R) from:

$$R = a$$

Then applying Mercator (Spherical) formulae:

$$E = FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = FN + R \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \phi/2)]$$

where symbols are as listed in 1.3.3.1 above and logarithms are natural.

If latitude  $\phi = 90^\circ$ , N is infinite. The above formula for N will fail near to the pole, and should not be used poleward of  $88^\circ$ .

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude on the ellipsoid from E and N values are:

$$D = -(N - FN) / R = (FN - N) / R$$

$$\varphi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(e^D) \text{ where } e = \text{base of natural logarithms, } 2.7182818\dots$$

$$\lambda = [(E - FE)/R] + \lambda_0$$

$q_\alpha$  is the scale factor at a given azimuth  $\alpha$ . It is a function of the radius of curvature at that azimuth,  $R'$ , derived from:

$$R' = \rho v / (v \cos^2\alpha + \rho \sin^2\alpha)$$

$$q_\alpha = R / (R' \cos \varphi)$$

where  $\rho$  and  $v$  are the radii of curvature of the ellipsoid at latitude  $\varphi$  in the plane of the meridian and perpendicular to the meridian respectively;

$$\rho = a (1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{3/2}$$

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{1/2}$$

Then when the azimuth is  $0^\circ$ ,  $180^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$  or  $270^\circ$  the scale factors in the meridian ( $h$ ) and on the parallel ( $k$ ) are:

$$q_0 = q_{180} = h = R / (\rho \cos \varphi)$$

$$q_{90} = q_{270} = k = R / (v \cos \varphi)$$

which demonstrates the non-conformality of the Pseudo Mercator method.

Maximum angular distortion  $\omega$  is a function of latitude and is found from:

$$\omega = 2 \operatorname{asin}\{[\operatorname{ABS}(h - k)] / (h + k)\}$$

Note that in these formulas, as with those of the Mercator (Spherical) method above, the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\varphi_0$ ) is not used. However for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Pseudo-Mercator

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	$a = 6378137.0$ metres	$1/f = 298.2572236$
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	$0^\circ 00' 00.000''$ N	= 0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	$0^\circ 00' 00.000''$ E	= 0.0 rad
False easting	FE	0.00	metres
False northing	FN	0.00	metres

Forward calculation for the same coordinate values as used for the Mercator (Spherical) example in 1.3.3.1 above:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	$24^\circ 22' 54.433''$ N	=	0.425542460 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	$100^\circ 20' 00.000''$ W	=	-1.751147016 rad

$$R = 6378137.0$$

whence

$$E = -11\,169\,055.58 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 2\,800\,000.00 \text{ m}$$

and

$$h = 1.1034264$$

$$k = 1.0972914$$

$$\omega = 0^\circ 19' 10.01''$$

Reverse calculation for a point 10km north on the grid (-11 169 055.58 m E, 2 810 000.00m N) first gives:

$$D = -0.44056752$$

Then Latitude  $\varphi = 0.426970023 \text{ rad} = 24^\circ 27' 48.889'' \text{N}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda = -1.751147016 \text{ rad} = 100^\circ 20' 00.000'' \text{W}$

In comparison, the same WGS 84 ellipsoidal coordinates when converted to the WGS 84 / World Mercator projected coordinate reference system (EPSG CRS code 3395) using the ellipsoidal Mercator (1SP) variant A method described above results in a grid distance between the two points of 9944.4m, a scale difference of ~0.5%.

WGS 84		WGS 84 / Pseudo-Mercator		WGS 84 / World Mercator	
Latitude	Longitude	Easting	Northing	Easting	Northing
24°27'48.889"N	100°20'00.000"W	-11169055.58m	2810000.00m	-11169055.58m	2792311.49m
24°22'54.433"N	100°20'00.000"W	-11169055.58m	2800000.00m	-11169055.58m	2782367.06m
		0.00m	10000.00m	0.00m	9944.43m

### 1.3.4 Cassini-Soldner

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9806)

The Cassini-Soldner projection is the ellipsoidal version of the Cassini projection for the sphere. It is not conformal but as it is relatively simple to construct it was extensively used in the last century and is still useful for mapping areas with limited longitudinal extent. It has now largely been replaced by the conformal Transverse Mercator which it resembles. Like this, it has a straight central meridian along which the scale is true, all other meridians and parallels are curved, and the scale distortion increases rapidly with increasing distance from the central meridian.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + v[A - TA^3/6 - (8 - T + 8C)TA^5/120]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + X$$

where  $X = M - M_0 + v \tan \varphi [A^2/2 + (5 - T + 6C)A^4/24]$

$$A = (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \varphi$$

$$T = \tan^2 \varphi$$

$$C = e^2 \cos^2 \varphi / (1 - e^2)$$

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

and M, the distance along the meridian from equator to latitude  $\varphi$ , is given by

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians.

$M_0$  is the value of M calculated for the latitude of the natural origin  $\varphi_0$ . This may not necessarily be chosen as the equator.

To compute latitude and longitude from Easting and Northing the reverse formulas are:

$$\varphi = \varphi_1 - (v_1 \tan \varphi_1 / \rho_1) [D^2/2 - (1 + 3T_1)D^4/24]$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + [D - T_1 D^3/3 + (1 + 3T_1)T_1 D^5/15] / \cos \varphi_1$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

$$\rho_1 = a(1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{1.5}$$

$\varphi_1$  is the latitude of the point on the central meridian which has the same Northing as the point whose coordinates are sought, and is found from:

$$\varphi_1 = \mu_1 + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots)\sin 2\mu_1 + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots)\sin 4\mu_1 + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots)\sin 6\mu_1 + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots)\sin 8\mu_1 + \dots$$

where

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\mu_1 = M_1 / [a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN)$$

$$T_1 = \tan^2 \varphi_1$$

$$D = (E - FE) / v_1$$

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Trinidad 1903 / Trinidad Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1858	a = 20926348 ft	=	31706587.88 Clarke's links
		b = 20855233 ft		
	then	1/f = 294.2606764		e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006785146

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	10°26'30"N	=	0.182241463 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	61°20'00"W	=	-1.070468608 rad
False easting	FE	430000.00		Clarke's links
False northing	FN	325000.00		Clarke's links

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	10°00'00.00"N	=	0.17453293 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	62°00'00.00"W	=	-1.08210414 rad

first gives :

A	=	-0.01145876	C	=	0.00662550
T	=	0.03109120	M	=	5496860.24
v	=	31709831.92	M <sub>0</sub>	=	5739691.12

Then Easting	E	=	66644.94 Clarke's links
Northing	N	=	82536.22 Clarke's links

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00170207	D	=	-0.01145875
T <sub>1</sub>	=	0.03109544	M <sub>1</sub>	=	5497227.34
v <sub>1</sub>	=	31709832.34	$\mu_1$	=	0.17367306
$\varphi_1$	=	0.17454458	$\rho_1$	=	31501122.40

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	10°00'00.000"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	62°00'00.000"W

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5108 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 1.3.4.1 Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9833)

The grid for the island of Vanua Levu, Fiji, uses a modified form of the standard Cassini-Soldner projection known as the Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner.

Easting is calculated as for the standard Cassini-Soldner above. The standard Cassini-Soldner formula to derive projected Northing is modified to:

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + X - (X^3/6\rho v)$$

where  $\rho = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2\sin^2\phi)^{1.5}$  and X and v are as in the standard Cassini-Soldner above.

For the reverse calculation of latitude and longitude from easting and northing the standard Cassini-Soldner formula given in the previous section need to be modified to account for the hyperbolic correction factor  $(X^3/6\rho v)$ . Specifically for the Fiji Vanua Levu grid the following may be used. The standard Cassini-Soldner formula given in the previous section are used except that the equation for  $M_1$  is modified to

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN) + q$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_1' &= \phi_0 + (N - FN)/315320 \\ \rho_1' &= a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2\sin^2\phi_1')^{1.5} \\ v_1' &= a/(1 - e^2\sin^2\phi_1')^{0.5} \\ q' &= (N - FN)^3 / 6 \rho_1' v_1' \\ q &= (N - FN + q')^3 / 6 \rho_1' v_1' \end{aligned}$$

#### **Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Vanua Levu 1915 / Vanua Levu Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1880	a = 20926202 ft	= 317063.667 chains
		b = 20854895 ft	
	then	1/f = 293.4663077	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006803481
Latitude of natural origin	$\phi_0$	16°15'00"S	= -0.283616003 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	179°20'00"E	= 3.129957125 rad
False easting	FE	12513.318	chains
False northing	FN	16628.885	chains

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\phi$	= 16°50'29.2435"S	= -0.293938867 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 179°59'39.6115"E	= 3.141493807 rad

first gives :

A	= 0.011041875	C	= 0.006275088
T	= 0.091631819	M	= -92590.02
v	= 317154.24	M <sub>0</sub>	= -89336.59
$\rho$	= 315176.48	X	= -3259.28

Then Easting	E	= 16015.2890 chains
Northing	N	= 13369.6601 chains

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\phi_1'$	= 0.293952249	$q'$	= -0.058
$v_1'$	= 317154.25	q	= -0.058

$\rho_1'$		315176.50			
$e_1$	=	0.001706681	$D$	=	0.011041854
$T_1$	=	0.091644092	$M_1$	=	-92595.87
$v_1$	=	317154.25	$\mu_1$	=	-0.292540098
$\rho_1$	=	315176.51	$\varphi_1$	=	-0.293957437

Then Latitude  $\varphi$  = 16°50'29.2435"S  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 179°59'39.6115"E

### 1.3.5 Transverse Mercator

#### 1.3.5.1 General Case

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9807)

The Transverse Mercator projection in its various forms is the most widely used projected coordinate system for world topographical and offshore mapping. All versions have the same basic characteristics and formulas. The differences which distinguish the different forms of the projection which are applied in different countries arise from variations in the choice of values for the coordinate conversion parameters, namely the latitude of the natural origin, the longitude of the natural origin (central meridian), the scale factor at the natural origin (on the central meridian), and the values of False Easting and False Northing, which embody the units of measurement, given to the origin. Additionally there are variations in the width of the longitudinal zones for the projections used in different territories.

The following table indicates the variations in the coordinate conversion parameters which distinguish the different forms of the Transverse Mercator projection and are used in the EPSG dataset Transverse Mercator map projection operations:

TABLE 4  
**Transverse Mercator**

<b>Coordinate Operation Method Name</b>	<b>Areas used</b>	<b>Latitude of natural origin</b>	<b>Longitude of natural origin</b>	<b>CM Scale Factor</b>	<b>Zone width</b>	<b>False Easting</b>	<b>False Northing</b>
Transverse Mercator	Various, world wide	Various	Various	Various	Usually less than 6°	Various	Various
Gauss-Kruger	Former USSR, Yugoslavia, Germany, S. America, China	Usually 0°	Various, according to area of cover	Usually 1.000000	Often 6° or 3°, sometimes less than 3°	Various but often 500000 prefixed by zone number	Various
Gauss Boaga	Italy	Various	Various	0.9996	6°	Various	0m
Transverse Mercator (south oriented)	Southern Africa	0°	2° intervals E of 11°E	1.000000	2°	0m	0m
UTM North hemisphere	World wide equator to 84°N	Always 0°	6° intervals E of 177°W	Always 0.9996	Always 6°	500000 m	0m
UTM South hemisphere	World wide north of 80°S to equator	Always 0°	6° intervals E of 177°W	Always 0.9996	Always 6°	500000 m	10000000 m

In the EPSG dataset the Transverse Mercator, Gauss-Kruger and Gauss-Boaga coordinate conversion methods are considered to be the same under the name “Transverse Mercator”. The most familiar and commonly used Transverse Mercator in the oil industry is the Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM), a global system of 120 TM zones where many of the defining parameters have the same value in each zone.

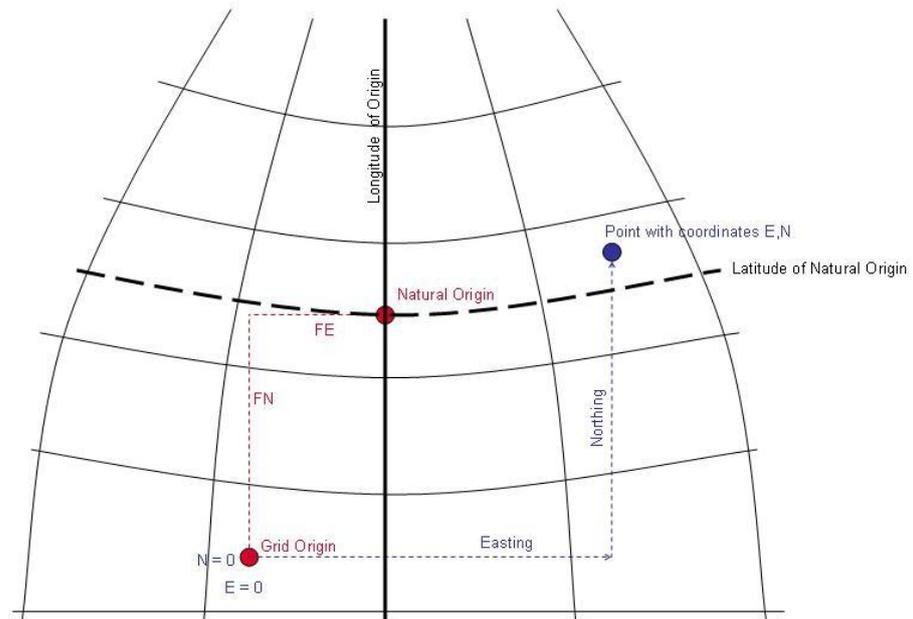


Figure 5 – Transverse Mercator in the northern hemisphere

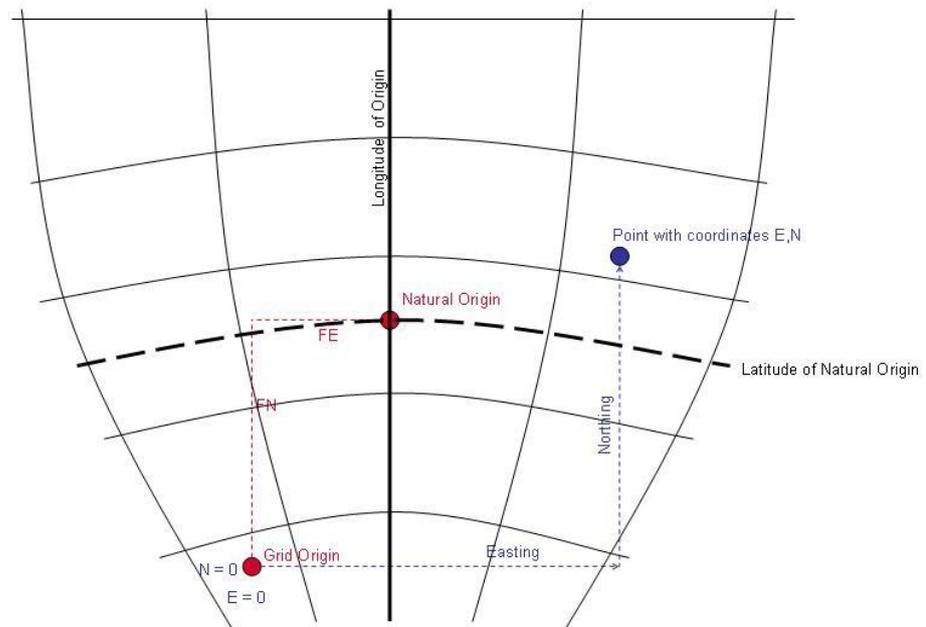


Figure 6 – Transverse Mercator in the southern hemisphere

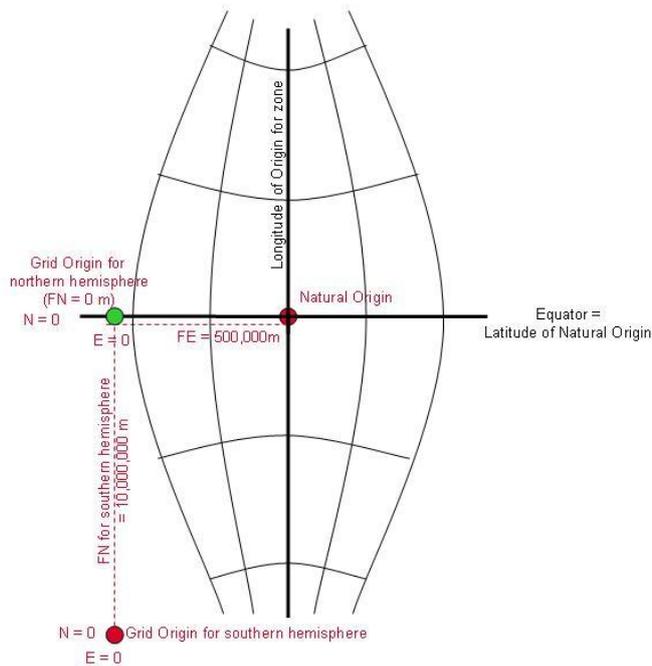


Figure 7 – One zone of the Universal Transverse Mercator system

From April 2010 the EPSG dataset supports two distinct formulas for the Transverse Mercator projection (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9807):

- Our original formulas which are based on those published by Snyder in US Geological Survey Professional Paper #1395 (referred to below as ‘USGS formulas’)
- Formulas which are based on those of Krüger and published in Finland as Recommendations for Public Administration (JHS) 154 (referred to below as ‘JHS formulas’).

Within  $\pm 4^\circ$  of longitude east or west of the projection longitude of origin, the results from these two formulas can be considered the same. Within this longitude range differences in results are never more than 3mm (forward conversion) and 0.0005" (reverse conversion), with these differences greatest at the outer limits of this  $\pm 4^\circ$  longitude band and also at high latitudes. Both USGS and JHS formulas are satisfactory within  $\pm 4^\circ$  east or west of the longitude of origin, the area for which the characteristics of the projection method are best suited. However the JHS formulas are more robust over a wider area – to  $\pm 40^\circ$  of the longitude of origin – and have better forward and reverse round trip closure. For these reasons the JHS formulas are now recommended.

It must be recognised that although the JHS formulae allow more accurate coordinate conversion over this wide band, the increasing distortions in distance, area and angle which are inherent in the Transverse Mercator projection method well away from the longitude of origin cannot be avoided. These distortions make the method quite unsuitable in these outer areas for many purposes, for example engineering and large scale mapping. *Warning: more than  $\pm 4^\circ$  of longitude east or west of the projection longitude of origin, the USGS and JHS formulas produce different results. Their use should not be mixed, else location integrity will be compromised.*

JHS formulas:

For the calculation of easting and northing from latitude and longitude, first calculate constants for the projection:

n	=	f / (2-f)
B	=	[a/(1+n)] (1 + n <sup>2</sup> /4 + n <sup>4</sup> /64)
h <sub>1</sub>	=	n/2 - (2/3)n <sup>2</sup> + (5/16)n <sup>3</sup> + (41/180)n <sup>4</sup>
h <sub>2</sub>	=	(13/48)n <sup>2</sup> - (3/5)n <sup>3</sup> + (557/1440)n <sup>4</sup>
h <sub>3</sub>	=	(61/240)n <sup>3</sup> - (103/140)n <sup>4</sup>
h <sub>4</sub>	=	(49561/161280)n <sup>4</sup>

Then the meridional arc distance from equator to the projection origin (M<sub>0</sub>) is computed from:

If φ<sub>0</sub> = 0 then M<sub>0</sub> = 0

else if φ<sub>0</sub> ≡ 90°N ≡ π/2 radians then M<sub>0</sub> = B (π/2)

else if φ<sub>0</sub> ≡ 90°S ≡ -π/2 radians then M<sub>0</sub> = B (-π/2)

else

Q <sub>0</sub>	=	asinh(tanφ <sub>0</sub> ) - [e atanh(e sinφ <sub>0</sub> )]
β <sub>0</sub>	=	atan(sinh Q <sub>0</sub> )
ξ <sub>00</sub>	=	asin (sin β <sub>0</sub> )

Note: The previous two steps are taken from the generic calculation flow given below for latitude φ, but here for φ<sub>0</sub> may be simplified to ξ<sub>00</sub> = β<sub>0</sub> = atan(sinh Q<sub>0</sub>).

ξ <sub>01</sub>	=	h <sub>1</sub> sin(2ξ <sub>00</sub> )
ξ <sub>02</sub>	=	h <sub>2</sub> sin(4ξ <sub>00</sub> )
ξ <sub>03</sub>	=	h <sub>3</sub> sin(6ξ <sub>00</sub> )
ξ <sub>04</sub>	=	h <sub>4</sub> sin(8ξ <sub>00</sub> )
ξ <sub>0</sub>	=	ξ <sub>00</sub> + ξ <sub>01</sub> + ξ <sub>02</sub> + ξ <sub>03</sub> + ξ <sub>04</sub>
M <sub>0</sub>	=	B ξ <sub>0</sub>

end

Note: if the projection grid origin is very close to but not exactly at the pole (within 2" or 50m), the tangent function in the equation above for Q<sub>0</sub> is unstable and may fail. M<sub>0</sub> may instead be calculated (as in the USGS formula below) from:

$$M_0 = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi_0 - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi_0 + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi_0 - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi_0 + \dots]$$

with φ<sub>0</sub> in radians

Then

Q	=	asinh(tanφ) - [e atanh(e sinφ)]			
β	=	atan(sinh Q)			
η <sub>0</sub>	=	atanh [cos β sin(λ - λ <sub>0</sub> )]			
ξ <sub>0</sub>	=	asin (sin β cosh η <sub>0</sub> )			
ξ <sub>1</sub>	=	h <sub>1</sub> sin(2ξ <sub>0</sub> ) cosh(2η <sub>0</sub> )	η <sub>1</sub>	=	h <sub>1</sub> cos(2ξ <sub>0</sub> ) sinh(2η <sub>0</sub> )
ξ <sub>2</sub>	=	h <sub>2</sub> sin(4ξ <sub>0</sub> ) cosh(4η <sub>0</sub> )	η <sub>2</sub>	=	h <sub>2</sub> cos(4ξ <sub>0</sub> ) sinh(4η <sub>0</sub> )
ξ <sub>3</sub>	=	h <sub>3</sub> sin(6ξ <sub>0</sub> ) cosh(6η <sub>0</sub> )	η <sub>3</sub>	=	h <sub>3</sub> cos(6ξ <sub>0</sub> ) sinh(6η <sub>0</sub> )
ξ <sub>4</sub>	=	h <sub>4</sub> sin(8ξ <sub>0</sub> ) cosh(8η <sub>0</sub> )	η <sub>4</sub>	=	h <sub>4</sub> cos(8ξ <sub>0</sub> ) sinh(8η <sub>0</sub> )
ξ	=	ξ <sub>0</sub> + ξ <sub>1</sub> + ξ <sub>2</sub> + ξ <sub>3</sub> + ξ <sub>4</sub>	η	=	η <sub>0</sub> + η <sub>1</sub> + η <sub>2</sub> + η <sub>3</sub> + η <sub>4</sub>

and

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + k_0 B \eta$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + k_0 (B \xi - M_0)$$

For the reverse formulas to convert Easting and Northing projected coordinates to latitude and longitude first calculate constants of the projection where  $n$  is as for the forward conversion, as are  $B$  and  $M_0$ :

$h_1'$	=	$n/2 - (2/3)n^2 + (37/96)n^3 - (1/360)n^4$
$h_2'$	=	$(1/48)n^2 + (1/15)n^3 - (437/1440)n^4$
$h_3'$	=	$(17/480)n^3 - (37/840)n^4$
$h_4'$	=	$(4397/161280)n^4$

Then

$\eta'$	=	$(E - FE) / (B k_0)$			
$\xi'$	=	$[(N - FN) + k_0 M_0] / (B k_0)$			
$\xi_1'$	=	$h_1' \sin(2\xi') \cosh(2\eta')$	$\eta_1'$	=	$h_1' \cos(2\xi') \sinh(2\eta')$
$\xi_2'$	=	$h_2' \sin(4\xi') \cosh(4\eta')$	$\eta_2'$	=	$h_2' \cos(4\xi') \sinh(4\eta')$
$\xi_3'$	=	$h_3' \sin(6\xi') \cosh(6\eta')$	$\eta_3'$	=	$h_3' \cos(6\xi') \sinh(6\eta')$
$\xi_4'$	=	$h_4' \sin(8\xi') \cosh(8\eta')$	$\eta_4'$	=	$h_4' \cos(8\xi') \sinh(8\eta')$
$\xi_0'$	=	$\xi' - (\xi_1' + \xi_2' + \xi_3' + \xi_4')$	$\eta_0'$	=	$\eta' - (\eta_1' + \eta_2' + \eta_3' + \eta_4')$
$\beta'$	=	$\text{asin}(\sin \xi_0' / \cosh \eta_0')$			
$Q'$	=	$\text{asinh}(\tan \beta')$			
$Q''$	=	$Q' + [e \text{ atanh}(e \tanh Q')]$			
	=	$Q' + [e \text{ atanh}(e \tanh Q'')] \text{ which should be iterated until the change in } Q'' \text{ is insignificant}$			

Then

$$\varphi = \text{atan}(\sinh Q'')$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{asin}(\tanh(\eta_0') / \cos \beta')$$

USGS formulas (presented here only for backward compatibility within 4° of longitude of origin):

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + k_0 v [A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + k_0 \{M - M_0 + v \tan \varphi [A^2/2 + (5 - T + 9C + 4C^2)A^4/24 + (61 - 58T + T^2 + 600C - 330e'^2)A^6/720]\}$$

where  $T = \tan^2 \varphi$

$$C = e^2 \cos^2 \varphi / (1 - e^2)$$

$$A = (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \varphi, \text{ with } \lambda \text{ and } \lambda_0 \text{ in radians}$$

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

$$M = a [(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots) \varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots) \sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots) \sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots) \sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse formulas to convert Easting and Northing projected coordinates to latitude and longitude are:

$$\varphi = \varphi_1 - (v_1 \tan \varphi_1 / \rho_1) [D^2/2 - (5 + 3T_1 + 10C_1 - 4C_1^2 - 9e'^2)D^4/24 + (61 + 90T_1 + 298C_1 + 45T_1^2 - 252e'^2 - 3C_1^2)D^6/720]$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + [D - (1 + 2T_1 + C_1)D^3/6 + (5 - 2C_1 + 28T_1 - 3C_1^2 + 8e'^2 + 24T_1^2)D^5/120] / \cos \varphi_1$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

$$\rho_1 = a(1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{1.5}$$

$\varphi_1$  may be found as for the Cassini projection from:

$$\varphi_1 = \mu_1 + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots) \sin 2\mu_1 + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots) \sin 4\mu_1 \\ + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots) \sin 6\mu_1 + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots) \sin 8\mu_1 + \dots$$

and where

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\mu_1 = M_1 / [a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN) / k_0$$

$$T_1 = \tan^2 \varphi_1$$

$$C_1 = e^2 \cos^2 \varphi_1$$

$$e'^2 = e^2 / (1 - e^2)$$

$$D = (E - FE) / (v_1 k_0)$$

For areas south of the equator the value of latitude  $\varphi$  will be negative and the formulas above, to compute the E and N, will automatically result in the correct values. Note that the false northings of the origin, if the equator, will need to be large to avoid negative northings and for the UTM projection is in fact 10,000,000m. Alternatively, as in the case of Argentina's Transverse Mercator (Gauss-Kruger) zones, the origin is at the south pole with a northings of zero. However each zone central meridian takes a false easting of 500000m prefixed by an identifying zone number. This ensures that instead of points in different zones having the same eastings, every point in the country, irrespective of its projection zone, will have a unique set of projected system coordinates. Strict application of the above formulas, with south latitudes negative, will result in the derivation of the correct Eastings and Northings.

Similarly, in applying the reverse formulas to determine a latitude south of the equator, a negative sign for  $\varphi$  results from a negative  $\varphi_1$  which in turn results from a negative  $M_1$ .

### Examples

For Projected Coordinate Reference System OSGB 1936 / British National Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Airy 1830	$a = 6377563.396$ metres	$1/f = 299.32496$
	then	$e^2 = 0.00667054$	$e'^2 = 0.00671534$
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	49°00'00"N	= 0.85521133 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	2°00'00"W	= -0.03490659 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.9996012717	
False easting	FE	400000.00	metres
False northing	FN	-100000.00	metres

### JHS formulas:

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 50°30'00.00"N	= 0.88139127 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 00°30'00.00"E	= 0.00872665 rad

Constants of the projection:

n	=	0.00167322	B	=	6366914.609
$h_1$	=	0.0008347452	$h_2$	=	0.0000007554

$$\begin{aligned}
 h_3 &= 1.18487E-09 & h_4 &= 2.40864E-12 \\
 Q_0 &= 0.9787671618 & & \\
 \xi_{Q0} &= 0.8518980373 & \xi_{Q1} &= 0.0008273732 \\
 \xi_{Q2} &= -0.0000001986 & \xi_{Q3} &= -1.0918E-09 \\
 \xi_{Q4} &= 1.2218E-12 & M_0 &= 5429228.602 \\
 \\ 
 Q &= 1.0191767215 & \beta &= 0.8781064142 \\
 \eta_0 &= 0.0278629616 & \xi_0 &= 0.8785743280 \\
 \eta_1 &= -0.0000086229 & \xi_1 &= 0.0008215669 \\
 \eta_2 &= -0.0000000786 & \xi_2 &= -0.0000002768 \\
 \eta_3 &= 1.05551E-10 & \xi_3 &= -1.01855E-09 \\
 \eta_4 &= 3.97791E-13 & \xi_4 &= 1.67447E-12 \\
 \eta &= 0.0278542603 & \xi &= 0.8793956171
 \end{aligned}$$

Then Easting E = 577274.99 metres  
 Northing N = 69740.50 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\underline{h}_1'$	=	0.0008347455		$\underline{h}_2'$	=	0.0000000586
$\underline{h}_3'$	=	1.65563E-10		$\underline{h}_4'$	=	2.13692E-13

Then

$\xi'$	=	0.87939562		$\eta'$	=	0.0278542603
$\xi_1'$	=	0.0008213109		$\eta_1'$	=	-0.0000086953
$\xi_2'$	=	-0.0000000217		$\eta_2'$	=	-0.0000000061
$\xi_3'$	=	-1.41881E-10		$\eta_3'$	=	1.486E-11
$\xi_4'$	=	1.49609E-13		$\eta_4'$	=	3.50657E-14
$\xi_0'$	=	0.8785743280		$\eta_0'$	=	0.0278629616
$\beta'$	=	0.8781064142		Q'	=	1.0191767215
Q" 1 <sup>st</sup> iteration	=	1.0243166838		Q" 2 <sup>nd</sup> iteration	=	1.0243306667
Q" 3 <sup>rd</sup> iteration	=	1.0243307046		Q" 4 <sup>th</sup> iteration	=	1.0243307047

Then Latitude  $\phi$  = 50°30'00.000"N  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 00°30'00.000"E

USGS formulas:

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\phi$  = 50°30'00.00"N = 0.88139127 rad  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 00°30'00.00"E = 0.00872665 rad

first gives :

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= 0.02775415 & C &= 0.00271699 \\
 T &= 1.47160434 & M &= 5596050.46 \\
 v &= 6390266.03 & M_0 &= 5429228.60
 \end{aligned}$$

Then Easting E = 577274.99 metres  
 Northing N = 69740.50 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
 e_1 &= 0.00167322 & \mu_1 &= 0.87939562 \\
 M_1 &= 5599036.80 & v_1 &= 6390275.88
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_1 &= 0.88185987 & D &= 0.02775243 \\ \rho_1 &= 6372980.21 & C_1 &= 0.00271391 \\ T_1 &= 1.47441726 \end{aligned}$$

Then Latitude  $\varphi = 50^{\circ}30'00.000''\text{N}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda = 00^{\circ}30'00.000''\text{E}$

Comparison of results from JHS and USGS formulas:

	<u>Forward conversion, JHS minus USGS</u>							
	Latitude = 0°		Latitude = 25°		Latitude = 50°		Latitude = 75°	
	dE (mm)	dN (mm)	dE (mm)	dN (mm)	dE (mm)	dN (mm)	dE (mm)	dN (mm)
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 1^{\circ}$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 2^{\circ}$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 3^{\circ}$	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 4^{\circ}$	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 5^{\circ}$	3	0	-1	0	-1	0	0	-1
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 10^{\circ}$	404	0	-117	23	-75	-10	12	0
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 20^{\circ}$	52772	0	-15803	5730	-9383	-2453	1584	161

	<u>Reverse conversion, JHS minus USGS</u>							
	Latitude = 0°		Latitude = 25°		Latitude = 50°		Latitude = 75°	
	dN (")	dE (")	dN (")	dE (")	dN (")	dE (")	dN (")	dE (")
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 1^{\circ}$	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 2^{\circ}$	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 3^{\circ}$	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 4^{\circ}$	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000	-0.0001	0.0000	-0.0001	0.0000	-0.0002
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 5^{\circ}$	0.0000	-0.0001	0.0000	-0.0002	0.0000	-0.0006	0.0000	-0.0011
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 10^{\circ}$	0.0000	-0.0013	0.0024	-0.0322	0.0035	-0.0857	0.0018	-0.1408
$\lambda = \lambda_0 + 20^{\circ}$	0.0000	-1.7750	0.6895	-4.7213	0.0600	-12.7781	0.5258	-20.9142

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5101 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

**1.3.5.2 Transverse Mercator Zoned Grid System**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9824)

When the growth in distortion away from the projection origin is of concern, a projected coordinate reference system cannot be used far from its origin. A means of creating a grid system over a large area but also limiting distortion is to have several grid zones with most defining parameters being made common. Coordinates throughout the system are repeated in each zone. To make coordinates unambiguous the easting is prefixed by the relevant zone number. This procedure was adopted by German mapping in the 1930's through the Gauss-Kruger systems and later by American military mapping through the Universal Transverse Mercator (or UTM) grid system. (Note: subsequent civilian adoption of the systems usually ignores the zone prefix to easting. Where this is the case the formulas below do not apply: use the standard TM formula separately for each zone).

The parameter Longitude of natural origin ( $\lambda_0$ ) is changed from being a defining parameter to a derived parameter, replaced by two other defining parameters, the Initial Longitude (the western limit of zone 1) (

$\lambda_1$ ) and the Zone Width (W). Each of the remaining four Transverse Mercator defining parameters – Latitude of natural origin, Scale factor at natural origin, False easting and False northing – have the same parameter values in every zone.

The standard Transverse Mercator formulas above are modified as follows:

Zone number,  $Z$ , =  $\text{INT}((\lambda + \lambda_1 + W) / W)$  with  $\lambda$ ,  $\lambda_1$  and  $W$  in degrees.

where  $\lambda_1$  is the Initial Longitude of the zoned grid system and  $W$  is the width of each zone of the zoned grid system.

If  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $\lambda = (\lambda + 360)$  degrees.

Then,

$$\lambda_o = [Z W] - [\lambda_1 + (W/2)]$$

For the forward calculation,

$$\text{Easting, } E = Z * 10^6 + FE + k_o \cdot v [A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

and in the reverse calculation for longitude,

$$D = (E - [FE + Z * 10^6]) / (v_1 k_o)$$

### 1.3.5.3 **Transverse Mercator (South Orientated)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9808)

For the mapping of southern Africa a south oriented Transverse Mercator map projection method is used. Here the coordinate axes are called Westings and Southings and increment to the West and South from the origin respectively. See figure 8 for a diagrammatic illustration (and compare this with figures 5 and 6).

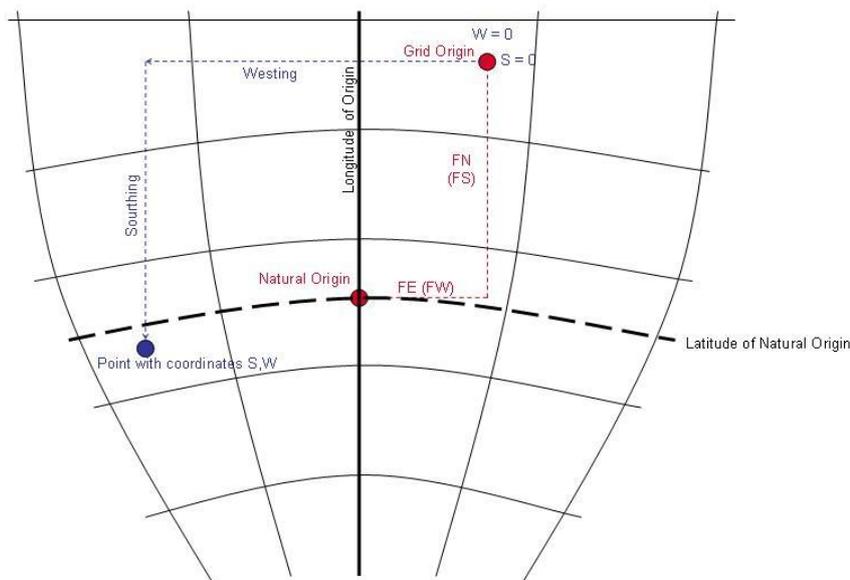


Figure 8 – Transverse Mercator (South Orientated) in the southern hemisphere

The general case of the Transverse Mercator formulas given above need to be modified to cope with this arrangement with

$$\text{Westing, } W = FE - k_0 v[A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

$$\text{Southing, } S = FN - k_0\{M - M_0 + v \tan \phi[A^2/2 + (5 - T + 9C + 4C^2)A^4/24 + (61 - 58T + T^2 + 600C - 330e'^2)A^6/720]\}$$

In these formulas the terms FE and FN retain their definition, i.e. in the Transverse Mercator (South Orientated) method they increase the Westing and Southing value at the natural origin. In this method they are effectively false westing (FW) and false southing (FS) respectively.

For the reverse formulas, those for the general case of the Transverse Mercator given above apply, with the exception that:

$$M_1 = M_0 - (S - FN)/k_0$$

and  $D = -(W - FE)/(v_1 k_0)$ , with  $v_1 = v$  for  $\phi_1$

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System Hartebeesthoek94 / Lo29

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	a = 6378137 metres	1/f = 298.25722356
	then	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006694380	e' <sup>2</sup> = 0.006739497
Latitude of natural origin	$\phi_0$	0°00'00"N	= 0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	29°00'00"E	= 0.506145483 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	1.0	
False westing	FW	0.00	metres
False southing	FS	0.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\phi$	= 25°43'55.302"S	= -0.449108618 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 28°16'57.479"E	= 0.493625066 rad

first gives :

A	=	-0.11278823	C	=	0.005469120
T	=	0.232281740	M	=	-2847147.08
v	=	6382165.01	M <sub>0</sub>	=	0.00

Then Westing	Y	=	71984.49 metres
Southing	X	=	2847342.74 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.001679220	$\mu_1$	=	-0.447171650
M <sub>1</sub>	=	-2847342.74	v <sub>1</sub>	=	6382165.53
$\phi_1$	=	-0.449139443	D	=	-0.011279007
$\rho_1$	=	6347451.58	C <sub>1</sub>	=	0.005468958
T <sub>1</sub>	=	0.232318356			

Then Latitude	$\phi$	=	25°43'55.302"S
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	28°16'57.479"E

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5113 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 1.3.6 Oblique Mercator

It has been noted that the Transverse Mercator map projection method is employed for the topographical mapping of longitudinal bands of territories, limiting the amount of scale distortion by limiting the extent of the projection either side of the central meridian. Sometimes the shape, general trend and extent of some countries makes it preferable to apply a single zone of the same kind of projection but with its central line aligned with the trend of the territory concerned rather than with a meridian. So, instead of a meridian forming this true scale central line for one of the various forms of Transverse Mercator, or the equator forming the line for the Mercator, a line with a particular azimuth traversing the territory is chosen and the same principles of construction are applied to derive what is now an Oblique Mercator. Such a single zone projection suits areas which have a large extent in one direction but limited extent in the perpendicular direction and whose trend is oblique to the bisecting meridian - such as East and West Malaysia and the Alaskan panhandle. The ellipsoidal development of the Oblique Mercator was originally applied at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century by Rosenmund to the mapping of Switzerland. Further developments were made in the 1920's by Laborde for the mapping of Madagascar and Reunion, and in the 1940's by Hotine for the mapping of Malaysia, for which he introduced the name Rectified Skew Orthomorphic.

These approaches differ slightly from each other in the use of intermediate surfaces used. Hotine projected the ellipsoid conformally onto a sphere of constant total curvature, called the 'aposphere', before projection onto the plane and then rotation of the grid to north. Like Hotine, Laborde used a triple projection technique to map the ellipsoid to the plane but in the Laborde method the rotation to north is made on the intermediate conformal sphere rather than in the projection plane. These different approaches give similar results, but unlike the Transverse Mercator method where different approaches are not significantly different within the normal area of use of the projection (sub-centimetre within 4° of the central meridian), with the Oblique Mercator formulas beyond a few hundred kilometres from the projection centre, particularly in the direction along the initial line, results from the Hotine development diverge rapidly from those given by Laborde's formulas.

EPSG therefore documents both the Hotine and Laborde Oblique Mercator methods. For the Hotine method we utilise Snyder's work which modified Hotine's hyperbolic functions to use exponential functions. And for the Hotine method we recognise two variants differentiated only by the point at which false grid coordinates are defined. Referring to figure 9 below, if the false grid coordinates are defined at the intersection of the initial line and the aposphere (the equator on one of the intermediate surfaces inherent in the method), that is at the natural origin of the coordinate system, the map projection method is known as variant A. If the false grid coordinates are defined at the projection centre the projection method is known as variant B. The defining parameters for these methods and variants are summarised in the following table:

EPSG Dataset coordinate operation method code:	<u>Method</u>		
	Hotine Variant A	Hotine Variant B	Laborde
	9812	9815	9813
<u>Parameter</u>			
Latitude of the projection centre ( $\phi_C$ )	x	x	x
Longitude of the projection centre ( $\lambda_C$ )	x	x	x
Azimuth of the initial line ( $\alpha_C$ )	x	x	x
Angle from the rectified grid to the skew (oblique) grid ( $\gamma_C$ )	x	x	
Scale factor on the initial line ( $k_C$ )	x	x	x
False Easting (easting at the natural origin) (FE)	x		
False Northing (northing at the natural origin) (FN)	x		
Easting at the projection centre ( $E_C$ )		x	x

Northing at the projection centre ( $N_c$ )

x

x

(Note: if the Hotine (variant B) method is used as an approximation to the Laborde method, the additional parameter required by that method, the angle from the rectified grid to the skew (oblique) grid  $\gamma_c$ , takes the same value as the azimuth of the initial line passing through the projection centre, i.e.  $\gamma_c = \alpha_c$ )

Snyder describes a further variation of the Hotine method where the initial line is defined by two points through which it passes. This approach is not currently included in the EPSG Dataset.

Specific references for the formulas originally used in the individual cases of these projections are:

- Switzerland: "Die Änderung des Projektionssystems der schweizerischen Landesvermessung." M. Rosenmund 1903. Also "Die projektionen der Schweizerischen Plan und Kartenwerke." J. Bollinger 1967 and "Formulas and constants for the calculation of the Swiss conformal cylindrical projection and for the transformation between coordinate systems." Federal Office of Topography (SwissTopo) 2008.
- Madagascar: "La nouvelle projection du Service Geographique de Madagascar". J. Laborde 1928.
- Malaysia: Series of Articles in numbers 62-66 of the Empire Survey Review of 1946 and 1947 by M. Hotine.

### 1.3.6.1 Hotine Oblique Mercator

The Hotine Oblique Mercator co-ordinate system is defined by:

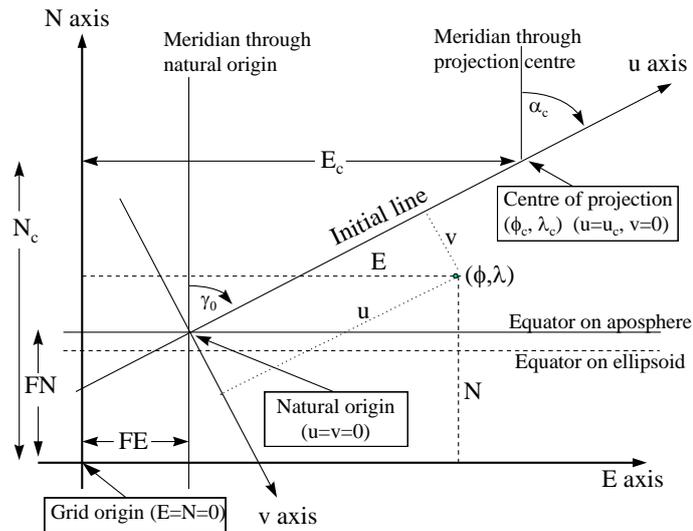


Figure 9. – Hotine Oblique Mercator Projection

The initial line central to the map area of given azimuth  $\alpha_c$  passes through a defined centre of the projection  $(\phi_c, \lambda_c)$ . The point where the projection of this line cuts the equator on the aposphere is the origin of the  $(u, v)$  co-ordinate system. The  $u$  axis is along the initial line and the  $v$  axis is perpendicular to ( $90^\circ$  clockwise from) this line.

In applying the formulas for both variants of the Hotine Oblique Mercator projection the first set of co-ordinates computed are referred to the  $(u, v)$  co-ordinate axes defined with respect to the initial line. These co-ordinates are then 'rectified' to the usual Easting and Northing by applying an orthogonal conversion. Hence the alternative name as the Rectified Skew Orthomorphic. The angle from rectified to skewed grid may be defined such that grid north coincides with true north at the natural origin of the projection, that is

where the initial line of the projection intersects equator on the aposphere. In some circumstances, particularly where the projection is used in non-equatorial areas such as the Alaskan panhandle, the angle from rectified to skewed grid is defined to be identical to the azimuth of the initial line at the projection centre; this results in grid and true north coinciding at the projection centre rather than at the natural origin.

To ensure that all co-ordinates in the map area have positive grid values, false co-ordinates are applied. These may be given values ( $E_C$ ,  $N_C$ ) if applied at the projection centre [variant B] or be applied as false easting (FE) and false northing (FN) at the natural origin [variant A].

The formulas can be used for the following cases:

Alaska State Plane Zone 1  
 Hungary EOVS  
 East and West Malaysia Rectified Skew Orthomorphic grids  
 Swiss Cylindrical projection

The Swiss and Hungarian systems are a special case of variant B where the azimuth of the line through the projection centre is 90 degrees. The variant B formulas may also be used as an approximation to the Laborde Oblique Mercator method and has been used in this way for the Madagascar grid (see following section).

From the defining parameters the following constants for the map projection may be calculated for both variants of the Hotine Oblique Mercator:

$$\begin{aligned} B &= \{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5} \\ A &= a B k_C (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C) \\ t_0 &= \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi_C / 2) / [(1 - e \sin \varphi_C) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_C)]^{e/2} \\ D &= B (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [\cos \varphi_C (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C)^{0.5}] \\ \text{To avoid problems with computation of F, if } D < 1 \text{ make } D^2 &= 1 \\ F &= D + (D^2 - 1)^{0.5} \cdot \text{SIGN}(\varphi_C) \\ H &= F t_0^B \\ G &= (F - 1/F) / 2 \\ \gamma_0 &= \text{asin}[\sin(\alpha_C) / D] \\ \lambda_0 &= \lambda_C - [\text{asin}(G \tan \gamma_0)] / B \end{aligned}$$

Then for variant B only, two further constants for the map projection, the ( $u_C$ ,  $v_C$ ) co-ordinates for the centre point ( $\varphi_C$ ,  $\lambda_C$ ), are calculated from:

$$v_C = 0$$

In general

$$u_C = (A / B) \text{atan}[(D^2 - 1)^{0.5} / \cos(\alpha_C)] * \text{SIGN}(\varphi_C)$$

but for the special cases where  $\alpha_C = 90$  degrees (e.g. Hungary, Switzerland) then

$$u_C = A (\lambda_C - \lambda_0)$$

**Forward case:** To compute (E,N) from a given ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ), for both variants of the Hotine Oblique Mercator method:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \tan(\pi / 4 - \varphi / 2) / [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]^{e/2} \\ Q &= H / t^B \\ S &= (Q - 1/Q) / 2 \\ T &= (Q + 1/Q) / 2 \\ V &= \sin(B (\lambda - \lambda_0)) \\ U &= (-V \cos(\gamma_0) + S \sin(\gamma_0)) / T \end{aligned}$$

$$v = A \ln[(1 - U) / (1 + U)] / (2 B)$$

Then either (a) for variant A, (where the FE and FN values have been specified with respect to the natural origin of the (u , v) axes):

$$u = A \operatorname{atan}\{(S \cos\gamma_0 + V \sin\gamma_0) / \cos[B (\lambda - \lambda_0)]\} / B$$

and the rectified skew co-ordinates are then derived from:

$$E = v \cos(\gamma_C) + u \sin(\gamma_C) + FE$$

$$N = u \cos(\gamma_C) - v \sin(\gamma_C) + FN$$

or (b) for variant B (where the false easting and northing values ( $E_C$  ,  $N_C$ ) have been specified with respect to the centre of the projection ( $\varphi_C$  ,  $\lambda_C$ ):

In general:

$$u = (A \operatorname{atan}\{(S \cos\gamma_0 + V \sin\gamma_0) / \cos[B (\lambda - \lambda_0)]\} / B) - [ABS(u_C) * SIGN(\varphi_C)]$$

but in the special case where  $\alpha_C = 90$  degrees:

if  $\lambda = \lambda_C$ ,  $u = 0$

$$\text{else } u = (A \operatorname{atan}\{(S \cos\gamma_0 + V \sin\gamma_0) / \cos[B (\lambda - \lambda_0)]\} / B) - [ABS(u_C) * SIGN(\varphi_C) * SIGN(\lambda_C - \lambda)]$$

and in all cases of this variant the rectified skew co-ordinates are then derived from:

$$E = v \cos(\gamma_C) + u \sin(\gamma_C) + E_C$$

$$N = u \cos(\gamma_C) - v \sin(\gamma_C) + N_C$$

**Reverse case:** To compute ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) from a given (E,N) :

For variant A:

$$v' = (E - FE) \cos(\gamma_C) - (N - FN) \sin(\gamma_C)$$

$$u' = (N - FN) \cos(\gamma_C) + (E - FE) \sin(\gamma_C)$$

or for variant B:

$$v' = (E - E_C) \cos(\gamma_C) - (N - N_C) \sin(\gamma_C)$$

$$u' = (N - N_C) \cos(\gamma_C) + (E - E_C) \sin(\gamma_C) + [ABS(u_C) * SIGN(\varphi_C)]$$

then for both variants:

$$Q' = e^{-(B v' / A)} \text{ where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

$$S' = (Q' - 1 / Q') / 2$$

$$T' = (Q' + 1 / Q') / 2$$

$$V' = \sin(B u' / A)$$

$$U' = (V' \cos(\gamma_0) + S' \sin(\gamma_0)) / T'$$

$$t' = \{H / [(1 + U') / (1 - U')]\}^{1/B}$$

$$\chi = \pi / 2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(t')$$

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi = & \chi + \sin(2\chi) (e^2 / 2 + 5 e^4 / 24 + e^6 / 12 + 13 e^8 / 360) \\ & + \sin(4\chi) (7 e^4 / 48 + 29 e^6 / 240 + 811 e^8 / 11520) \\ & + \sin(6\chi) (7 e^6 / 120 + 81 e^8 / 1120) + \sin(8\chi) (4279 e^8 / 161280) \end{aligned}$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 - \operatorname{atan} [(S' \cos\gamma_0 - V' \sin\gamma_0) / \cos(B u' / A)] / B$$

**Examples:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System Timbalai 1948 / R.S.O. Borneo (m) using variant B: (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9815).

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Everest 1830 (1967 Definition)	a = 6377298.556 metres	1/f = 300.8017
	then	e = 0.081472981	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006637847
Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	4°00'00"N	= 0.069813170 rad
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	115°00'00"E	= 2.007128640 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	53°18'56.9537"	= 0.930536611 rad
Angle from Rectified to Skew Grid	$\gamma_C$	53°07'48.3685"	= 0.927295218 rad
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	0.99984	
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	590476.87	metres
Northings at projection centre	$N_C$	442857.65	metres

Constants for the map projection:

B	=	1.003303209	F	=	1.072121256
A	=	6376278.686	H	=	1.000002991
t <sub>0</sub>	=	0.932946976	$\gamma_0$	=	0.927295218
D	=	1.002425787	$\lambda_0$	=	1.914373469
D <sup>2</sup>	=	1.004857458			
u <sub>c</sub>	=	738096.09	v <sub>c</sub>	=	0.00

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	5°23'14.1129"N	=	0.094025313 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	115°48'19.8196"E	=	2.021187362 rad

first gives :

t	=	0.910700729	Q	=	1.098398182
S	=	0.093990763	T	=	1.004407419
V	=	0.106961709	U	=	0.010967247
v	=	-69702.787	u	=	163238.163

Then Easting	E	=	679245.73 metres
Northing	N	=	596562.78 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

v'	=	-69702.787	u'	=	901334.257
Q'	=	1.011028053			
S'	=	0.010967907	T'	=	1.000060146
V'	=	0.141349378	U'	=	0.093578324
t'	=	0.910700729	$\chi$	=	0.093404829

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	5°23'14.113"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	115°48'19.820"E

If the same projection is defined using variant A then:

False easting	FE	=	0.0 metres
False northing	FN	=	0.0 metres
Then	u	=	901334.257

and all other values are as for variant B.

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedures 5105 and 5106 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS)..

### 1.3.6.2 Laborde Oblique Mercator

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9813).

The defining parameters for the Laborde Oblique Mercator projection method are:

- $\varphi_C$  = latitude of the projection centre
- $\lambda_C$  = longitude of the projection centre
- $\alpha_C$  = azimuth (true) of the initial line passing through the projection centre
- $k_C$  = scale factor on the initial line of the projection
- $E_C$  = Easting at the projection centre
- $N_C$  = Northing at the projection centre

All angular units should be converted to radians prior to use and all longitudes reduced to the Paris Meridan using the Paris Longitude of 2.5969212963 grads (2° 20' 14.025"E) east of Greenwich.

From these defining parameters the following constants for the map projection may be calculated:

$$B = \{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C] / (1 - e^2)\}^{0.5}$$

$$\varphi_s = \text{asin}[\sin \varphi_C / B]$$

$$R = a \cdot k_C \{ (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C] \}$$

$$C = \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_s / 2)] - B \cdot \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_C / 2) ([1 - e \sin \varphi_C] / [1 + e \sin \varphi_C])^{(e/2)}\}$$

**Forward case:** To compute (E,N) from a given ( $\varphi, \lambda$ )

$$L = B \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_C)$$

$$q = C + B \cdot \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) ([1 - e \sin \varphi] / [1 + e \sin \varphi])^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$P = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^q) - \pi/2 \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

$$U = \cos P \cdot \cos L \cdot \cos \varphi_s + \sin P \cdot \sin \varphi_s$$

$$V = \cos P \cdot \cos L \cdot \sin \varphi_s - \sin P \cdot \cos \varphi_s$$

$$W = \cos P \cdot \sin L$$

$$d = (U^2 + V^2)^{0.5}$$

if  $d <> 0$  then  $L' = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(V/(U+d))$  and  $P' = \text{atan}(W/d)$

if  $d = 0$  then  $L' = 0$  and  $P' = \text{sign}(W) \cdot \pi/2$

$$H = -L' + i \cdot \ln(\tan(\pi/4 + P'/2)) \quad \text{where } i^2 = -1$$

$$G = (1 - \cos(2 \cdot \alpha_C) + i \cdot \sin(2 \cdot \alpha_C)) / 12$$

$$E = E_C + R \cdot \text{IMAGINARY}(H + G \cdot H^3)$$

$$N = N_C + R \cdot \text{REAL}(H + G \cdot H^3)$$

**Reverse case:** To compute ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) from a given (E,N):

$$G = (1 - \cos(2 \cdot \alpha_C) + i \cdot \sin(2 \cdot \alpha_C)) / 12 \quad \text{where } i^2 = -1$$

To solve for Latitude and Longitude, a re-iterative solution is required, where the first two elements are

$$H_0 = (N - FN) / R + i \cdot (E - FE) / R \quad \text{ie } k = 0$$

$$H_1 = H_0 / (H_0 + G \cdot H_0^3), \text{ i.e. } k = 1,$$

and in subsequent reiterations, k increments by 1

$$H_{k+1} = (H_0 + 2 \cdot G \cdot H_k^3) / (3 \cdot G \cdot H_k^2 + 1)$$

Re-iterate until  $\text{ABSOLUTE}(\text{REAL}([H_0 - H_k - G \cdot H_k^3])) < 1E-11$

$$L' = -1 \cdot \text{REAL}(H_k)$$

$$P' = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^{\text{IMAGINARY}(H_k)}) - \pi/2 \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

$$U' = \cos P' \cdot \cos L' \cdot \cos \varphi_s + \cos P' \cdot \sin L' \cdot \sin \varphi_s$$

$$V' = \sin P'$$

$$W' = \cos P' \cdot \cos L' \cdot \sin \varphi_s - \cos P' \cdot \sin L' \cdot \cos \varphi_s$$

$$d = (U'^2 + V'^2)^{0.5}$$

if  $d <> 0$  then  $L = 2 \cdot \text{atan}[V' / (U' + d)]$  and  $P = \text{atan}(W' / d)$

if  $d = 0$  then  $L = 0$  and  $P = \text{SIGN}(W') \cdot \pi/2$   
 $\lambda = \lambda_C + (L/B)$

$$q' = \{\ln[\tan(\pi/4 + P/2)] - C\} / B$$

The final solution for latitude requires a second re-iterative process, where the first element is

$$\varphi'_0 = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^{q'}) - \pi/2 \text{ where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

And the subsequent elements are

$$\varphi'_k = 2 \cdot \text{atan}\left(\frac{\{1 + e \cdot \sin[\varphi'_{k-1}]\}}{\{1 - e \cdot \sin[\varphi'_{k-1}]\}}\right)^{(e/2)} \cdot e^{q'} - \pi/2 \text{ for } k = 1 \rightarrow$$

Iterate until  $\text{ABSOLUTE}(\varphi'_k - \varphi'_{k-1}) < 1E-11$

$$\varphi = \varphi'_k$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System Tananarive (Paris) / Laborde Grid.

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	International 1924		$a = 6378388$ metres	$1/f = 297$
		then	$e = 0.081991890$	$e^2 = 0.006722670$
Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	21 grads S	=	-0.329867229 rad
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	49 grads E of Paris	=	51.5969213 grads E of Greenwich
			=	0.810482544 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	21 grads	=	0.329867229 rad
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	0.9995		
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	400000		metres
Northings at projection centre	$N_C$	800000		metres

Constants for the map projection:

$B$	=	1.002707541	$\varphi_s$	=	-0.328942879
$R$	=	6358218.319	$C$	=	-0.0002973474

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	16°11'23.280"S		
			17.9886666667 grads S	=	-0.282565315 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	44°27'27.260"E of Greenwich		
			46.800381173 grads E of Paris	=	0.735138668 rad

first gives :

$L$	=	-0.034645081	$q$	=	-0.285595283	$P$	=	-0.281790207
$U$	=	0.998343010	$V$	=	-0.046948995	$W$	=	-0.033271994
$d$	=	0.999446334	$L'$	=	-0.046992297	$P'$	=	-0.033278135
$H$	=	0.046992297 -	$G$	=	0.017487082 +			
		0.033284279i			0.051075588i			

Then Easting	$E$	=	188333.848 metres
Northing	$N$	=	1098841.091 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$G$	=	0.017487082 +	$H_0$	=	0.047000760 -	$H_1$	=	0.999820949 -
		0.051075588i			0.033290167i			0.000001503i
$H_k$	=	0.046992297 -	$L'$	=	-0.046992297	$P'$	=	-0.033278136

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 & & 0.033284279i \\
 U' & = & 0.959982752 \\
 d & = & 0.960559165 \\
 q' & = & -0.284527565 \\
 V' & = & -0.033271994 \\
 L & = & -0.3464508142 \\
 \varphi'_0 & = & -0.280764449 \\
 W' & = & -0.278075693 \\
 P & = & -0.281790207
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Then Latitude } \varphi & = & -0.282565315 \text{ rad} = 17.9886666667 \text{ grads S} \\
 & & = 16^\circ 11' 23.280'' \text{S} \\
 \text{Longitude } \lambda & = & 0.735138668 \text{ rad} = 46.8003811733 \text{ grads East of Paris} \\
 & & = 44^\circ 27' 27.260'' \text{E of Greenwich}
 \end{array}$$

Comparing the Hotine Oblique Mercator (variant B) method as an approximation of the Laborde formula:

Latitude	Greenwich Longitude	<u>Using Laborde formula</u>		<u>Using Hotine variant B</u>		dX (m)	dY (m)
		Northing X	Easting Y	Northing X	Easting Y		
18°54'S	47°30'E	799665.521	511921.054	799665.520	511921.054	0.00	0.00
16°12'S	44°24'E	1097651.447	182184.982	1097651.426	182184.985	0.02	0.00
25°40'S	45°18'E	50636.222	285294.334	50636.850	285294.788	0.63	0.45
12°00'S	49°12'E	1561109.146	701354.056	1561109.350	701352.935	0.20	1.12

Within 450 kilometres of the projection origin near Antananarivo, Laborde's formulas can be approximated to better than 2cm by the Hotine method, which is satisfactory for most purposes. But at 600 kilometres from the origin along the initial line the Hotine method approximates Laborde's formulas to no better than 1 metre.

### 1.3.7 Stereographic

The Stereographic projection may be imagined to be a projection of the earth's surface onto a plane in contact with the earth at a single tangent point from a projection point at the opposite end of the diameter through that tangent point.

This projection is best known in its polar form and is frequently used for mapping polar areas where it complements the Universal Transverse Mercator used for lower latitudes. Its spherical form has also been widely used by the US Geological Survey for planetary mapping and the mapping at small scale of continental hydrocarbon provinces. In its transverse or oblique ellipsoidal forms it is useful for mapping limited areas centred on the point where the plane of the projection is regarded as tangential to the ellipsoid., e.g. the Netherlands. The tangent point is the origin of the projected coordinate system and the meridian through it is regarded as the central meridian. In order to reduce the scale error at the extremities of the projection area it is usual to introduce a scale factor of less than unity at the origin such that a unitary scale factor applies on a near circle centred at the origin and some distance from it.

The coordinate conversion from geographic to projected coordinates is executed via the distance and azimuth of the point from the centre point or origin. For a sphere the formulas are relatively simple. For the ellipsoid the parameters defining the conformal sphere at the tangent point as origin are first derived. The conformal latitudes and longitudes are substituted for the geodetic latitudes and longitudes of the spherical formulas for the origin and the point.

An alternative approach is given by Snyder, where, instead of defining a single conformal sphere at the origin point, the conformal latitude at each point on the ellipsoid is computed. The conformal longitude is then always equivalent to the geodetic longitude. This approach is a valid alternative to that given here, but gives slightly different results away from the origin point. The USGS formula is therefore considered by OGP to be a different coordinate operation method to that described here.

**1.3.7.1 Oblique and Equatorial Stereographic**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9809)

Given the geodetic origin of the projection at the tangent point  $(\varphi_0, \lambda_0)$ , the parameters defining the conformal sphere are:

$$R = (\rho_0 v_0)^{0.5}$$

$$n = \{1 + [(e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_0) / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5}$$

$$c = (n + \sin \varphi_0) (1 - \sin \chi_0) / [(n - \sin \varphi_0) (1 + \sin \chi_0)]$$

where:  $\sin \chi_0 = (w_1 - 1) / (w_1 + 1)$   
 $w_1 = [S_1 (S_2)^e]^n$   
 $S_1 = (1 + \sin \varphi_0) / (1 - \sin \varphi_0)$   
 $S_2 = (1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)$

The conformal latitude and longitude of the origin  $(\chi_0, \Lambda_0)$  are then computed from :

$$\chi_0 = \sin^{-1} [(w_2 - 1) / (w_2 + 1)]$$

where  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are as above and  $w_2 = c [S_1 (S_2)^e]^n = c w_1$

$$\Lambda_0 = \lambda_0$$

For any point with geodetic coordinates  $(\varphi, \lambda)$  the equivalent conformal latitude and longitude  $(\chi, \Lambda)$  are then computed from

$$\Lambda = n(\lambda - \Lambda_0) + \Lambda_0$$

and

$$\chi = \sin^{-1} [(w - 1) / (w + 1)]$$

where  $w = c [S_a (S_b)^e]^n$   
 $S_a = (1 + \sin \varphi) / (1 - \sin \varphi)$   
 $S_b = (1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)$

Then

$$E = FE + 2 R k_0 \cos \chi \sin(\Lambda - \Lambda_0) / B$$

and

$$N = FN + 2 R k_0 [\sin \chi \cos \chi_0 - \cos \chi \sin \chi_0 \cos(\Lambda - \Lambda_0)] / B$$

where  $B = [1 + \sin \chi \sin \chi_0 + \cos \chi \cos \chi_0 \cos(\Lambda - \Lambda_0)]$

The reverse formulas to compute the geodetic coordinates from the grid coordinates involves computing the conformal values, then the isometric latitude and finally the geodetic values.

The parameters of the conformal sphere and conformal latitude and longitude at the origin are computed as above. Then for any point with Stereographic grid coordinates  $(E, N)$  :

$$\chi = \chi_0 + 2 \tan^{-1} \{[(N - FN) - (E - FE) \tan(j/2)] / (2 R k_0)\}$$

$$\Lambda = j + 2 i + \Lambda_0$$

where  $g = 2 Rk_0 \tan (\pi/4 - \chi_0/2)$   
 $h = 4 Rk_0 \tan \chi_0 + g$   
 $i = \tan^{-1} \{ (E - FE) / [h + (N - FN)] \}$   
 $j = \tan^{-1} \{ (E - FE) / [g - (N - FN)] \} - i$

Geodetic longitude  $\lambda = (\Lambda - \Lambda_0) / n + \Lambda_0$

Isometric latitude  $\psi = 0.5 \ln \{ (1 + \sin\chi) / [c (1 - \sin\chi)] \} / n$

First approximation  $\varphi_1 = 2 \tan^{-1} e^{\Psi} - \pi / 2$  where  $e$ =base of natural logarithms.

$\psi_i$  = isometric latitude at  $\varphi_i$

where  $\psi_i = \ln \{ [\tan(\varphi_i/2 + \pi/4)] [(1 - e \sin\varphi_i)/(1 + e \sin\varphi_i)]^{(e/2)} \}$

Then iterate  $\varphi_{i+1} = \varphi_i - (\psi_i - \psi) \cos \varphi_i (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_i) / (1 - e^2)$

until the change in  $\varphi$  is sufficiently small.

If the projection is the equatorial case,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\chi_0$  will be zero degrees and the formulas are simplified as a result, but the above formulas remain valid.

For the polar version,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\chi_0$  will be 90 degrees and the formulas become indeterminate. See below for formulas for the polar case.

For stereographic projections centred on points in the southern hemisphere, the signs of E, N,  $\lambda_0$  and  $\lambda$  must be reversed to be used in the equations and  $\varphi$  will be negative anyway as a southerly latitude.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Amersfoort / RD New

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: Bessel 1841  $a = 6377397.155$  metres  $1/f = 299.15281$   
 then  $e = 0.08169683$

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	52°09'22.178"N	=	0.910296727 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	5°23'15.500"E	=	0.094032038 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.9999079		
False easting	FE	155000.00		metres
False northing	FN	463000.00		metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°N	=	0.925024504 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	6°E	=	0.104719755 rad

first gives the conformal sphere constants:

$\rho_0 = 6374588.71$	$v_0 = 6390710.613$	
$R = 6382644.571$	$n = 1.000475857$	$c = 1.007576465$

where  $S_1 = 8.509582274$   $S_2 = 0.878790173$   $w_1 = 8.428769183$

$$\sin \chi_0 = 0.787883237$$

$$w_2 = 8.492629457 \quad \chi_0 = 0.909684757 \quad \Lambda_0 = \lambda_0 = 0.094032038 \text{ rad}$$

For the point  $(\varphi, \lambda)$   $\chi = 0.924394997 \quad \Lambda = 0.104724841 \text{ rad}$

hence  $B = 1.999870665$

and  $E = 196105.283 \text{ m} \quad N = 557057.739 \text{ m}$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (196105.28E, 557057.74N) first gives:

$$g = 4379954.188 \quad h = 37197327.960 \quad i = 0.001102255 \quad j = 0.008488122$$

then  $\Lambda = 0.10472467$  whence  $\lambda = 0.104719584 \text{ rad} = 6^\circ\text{E}$

Also  $\chi = 0.924394767$  and  $\psi = 1.089495123$   
 Then  $\varphi_1 = 0.921804948 \quad \psi_1 = 1.084170164$   
 $\varphi_2 = 0.925031162 \quad \psi_2 = 1.089506925$   
 $\varphi_3 = 0.925024504 \quad \psi_3 = 1.089495505$   
 $\varphi_4 = 0.925024504$

Then Latitude  $\varphi = 53^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{N}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda = 6^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{E}$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5104 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 1.3.7.2 Polar Stereographic

For the polar stereographic projection, three variants are recognised, differentiated by their defining parameters. In the basic variant (**variant A**) the latitude of origin is either the north or the south pole, at which is defined a scale factor at the natural origin, the meridian along which the northing axis increments and along which intersecting parallels increment *towards the north pole* (the longitude of origin), and false grid coordinates. In **variant B** instead of the scale factor at the pole being defined, the (non-polar) latitude at which the scale is unity – the standard parallel – is defined. In **variant C** the latitude of a standard parallel along which the scale is unity is defined; the intersection of this parallel with the longitude of origin is the false origin, at which grid coordinate values are defined.

<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Method</u>		
	<u>Variant A</u> (note 1)	<u>Variant B</u> (note 2)	<u>Variant C</u> (note 2)
Latitude of natural origin ( $\varphi_0$ )			
Latitude of standard parallel ( $\varphi_F$ )		x	x
Longitude of origin ( $\lambda_0$ )	x	x	x
Scale at natural origin ( $k_0$ )	x		
False easting (easting at natural origin = pole) (FE)	x	x	
False northing (northing at natural origin = pole) (FN)	x	x	
Easting at false origin ( $E_F$ )			x
Northing at false origin ( $N_F$ )			x

In all three variants the formulae for the **south pole case** are straightforward but some require modification for the **north pole case** to allow the longitude of origin going towards (as opposed to away from) the natural



Figure 10 – Polar Stereographic Projection

Polar Stereographic (Variant A) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9810).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude, for the south pole case

$$dE = \rho \sin(\theta)$$

and

$$dN = \rho \cos(\theta)$$

where  $\theta = (\lambda - \lambda_0)$

Then

$$E = dE + FE = FE + \rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = dN + FN = FN + \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

where

$$t = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi) / (1 - e \sin\varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$\rho = 2 a k_0 t / \{[(1+e)^{(1+e)} (1-e)^{(1-e)}]^{0.5}\}$$

For the north pole case,

$$dE = \rho \sin(\theta) = \rho \sin(\omega)$$

$$dN = \rho \cos(\theta) = -\rho \cos(\omega)$$

where, as shown in figure 10,  $\omega =$  longitude  $\lambda$  measured anticlockwise in the projection plane.

$\rho$  and  $E$  are found as for the south pole case but

$$t = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi/2) \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi) / (1 - e \sin\varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$N = FN - \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi = \chi &+ (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi) \\ &+ (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi) \\ &+ (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\rho' = [(E - FE)^2 + (N - FN)^2]^{0.5}$

$$t' = \rho' \{[(1+e)^{(1+e)} (1-e)^{(1-e)}]^{0.5}\} / 2 a k_0$$

and for the south pole case

$$\chi = 2 \operatorname{atan}(t') - \pi/2$$

but for the north pole case

$$\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t'$$

Then for both north and south cases if  $E = FE$ ,  $\lambda = \lambda_0$

else for the south pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \operatorname{atan}2[(E - FE), (N - FN)]$$

and for the north pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \operatorname{atan}2[(E - FE), (FN - N)]$$

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / UPS North

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: WGS 84 a = 6378137.0 metres 1/f = 298.2572236  
 then e = 0.081819191

Latitude of natural origin  $\phi_0$  90°00'00.000"N = 1.570796327 rad  
 Longitude of natural origin  $\lambda_0$  0°00'00.000"E = 0.0 rad  
 Scale factor at natural origin  $k_0$  0.994  
 False easting FE 2000000.00 metres  
 False northing FN 2000000.00 metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\phi$  = 73°N = 1.274090354 rad  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 44°E = 0.767944871 rad

t = 0.150412808  
 $\rho$  = 1900814.564

whence

E = 3320416.75 m  
 N = 632668.43 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (3320416.75 E, 632668.43 N) first gives:

$\rho'$  = 1900814.566  
 t' = 0.150412808  
 $\chi$  = 1.2722090

Then Latitude  $\phi$  = 73°00'00.000"N  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 44°00'00.000"E

Polar Stereographic (Variant B) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9829).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude:  
 for the south pole case

$$t_F = \tan(\pi/4 + \phi_F/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin\phi_F) / (1 - e \sin\phi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$m_F = \cos \phi_F / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\phi_F)^{0.5}$$

$$k_0 = m_F \{[(1+e)^{(1+e)} (1-e)^{(1-e)}]^{0.5}\} / (2*t_F)$$

then t,  $\rho$ , E and N are found as in the south pole case of variant A.

For the north pole case,  $m_F$  and  $k_0$  are found as for the south pole case above, but

$$t_F = \tan(\pi/4 - \phi_F/2) \{[(1 + e \sin\phi_F) / (1 - e \sin\phi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

Then t,  $\rho$ , E and N are found as in variant A.

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude, first  $k_0$  is found from  $m_F$  and  $t_F$  as in the forward conversion above, then  $\phi$  and  $\lambda$  are found as for variant A.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Australian Antarctic Polar Stereographic

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: WGS 84 a = 6378137.0 metres 1/f = 298.2572236  
 then e = 0.081819191

Latitude of standard parallel  $\varphi_F$  71°00'00.000"S = -1.239183769 rad  
 Longitude of origin  $\lambda_O$  70°00'00.000"E = 1.221730476 rad  
 False easting FE 6000000.00 metres  
 False northing FN 6000000.00 metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi$  = 75°00'00.000"S = -1.308996939 rad  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 120°00'00.000"E = 2.094395102 rad

$t_F = 0.168407325$   
 $m_F = 0.326546781$   
 $k_O = 0.97276901$   
 $t = 0.132508348$   
 $\rho = 1638783.238$

whence

E = 7255380.79 m  
 N = 7053389.56 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (7255380.79 E, 7053389.56 N) first gives:

$t_F = 0.168407325$   $m_F = 0.326546781$  and  $k_O = 0.97276901$   
 then  $\rho' = 1638783.236$   $t' = 0.132508347$   $\chi = -1.3073146$

Then Latitude  $\varphi$  = 75°00'00.000"S  
 Longitude  $\lambda$  = 120°00'00.000"E

Polar Stereographic (Variant C) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9830).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude, for the south pole case

$$E = E_F + \rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

$$N = N_F - \rho_F + \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

where

$$m_F \text{ is found as in variant B } = \cos \varphi_F / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_F)^{0.5}$$

$$t_F \text{ is found as in variant B } = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_F/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin \varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$t \text{ is found as in variants A and B } = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi) / (1 - e \sin \varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$\rho_F = a m_F$$

$$\rho = \rho_F t / t_F$$

For the north pole case,  $m_F$ ,  $\rho_F$ ,  $\rho$  and E are found as for the south pole case but

$$t_F \text{ is found as in variant B } = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi_F/2) \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin \varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$t \text{ is found as in variants A and B } = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi/2) \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi) / (1 - e \sin \varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$N = N_F + \rho_F - \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude,

$$\varphi = \chi + (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi)$$

$$+ (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi) \\ + (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi)$$

(as for variants A and B)

where for the south pole case

$$\rho' = [(E-E_F)^2 + (N - N_F + \rho_F)^2]^{0.5}$$

$$t' = \rho' t_F / \rho_F$$

$$\chi = 2 \operatorname{atan}(t') - \pi/2$$

and where  $m_F$  and  $t_F$  are as for the forward conversion

For the reverse conversion north pole case,  $m_F$ ,  $t_F$  and  $\rho_F$  are found as for the north pole case of the forward conversion, and

$$\rho' = [(E-E_F)^2 + (N - N_F - \rho_F)^2]^{0.5}$$

$$t' \text{ is found as for the south pole case of the reverse conversion} = \rho' t_F / \rho_F$$

$$\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t'$$

Then for for both north and south pole cases

if  $E = E_F$ ,  $\lambda = \lambda_O$

else for the south pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_O + \operatorname{atan}2[(E - E_F), (N - N_F + \rho_F)]$$

and for the north pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_O + \operatorname{atan}2[(E - E_F), (N_F + \rho_F - N)]$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Petrels 1972 / Terre Adelie Polar Stereographic

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: International 1924     $a = 6378388.0$  metres     $1/f = 297.0$   
 then     $e = 0.081991890$

Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	67°00'00.000"S	=	-1.169370599 rad
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	140°00'00.000"E	=	2.443460953 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	300000.00	metres	
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	200000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	66°36'18.820"S	=	-1.162480524 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	140°04'17.040"E	=	2.444707118 rad

$$m_F = 0.391848769$$

$$\rho_F = 2499363.488$$

$$t_F = 0.204717630$$

$$t = 0.208326304$$

$$\rho = 2543421.183$$

whence

$$E = 303169.52 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 244055.72 \text{ m}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (303169.522 E, 244055.721 N) first gives:

$$\rho' = 2543421.183$$

$$t' = 0.208326304$$

$$\chi = -1.1600190$$

Then Latitude  $\varphi$  = 66°36'18.820"S  
Longitude  $\lambda$  = 140°04'17.040"E

### **1.3.8 New Zealand Map Grid**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9811)

This projection system typifies the recent development in the design and formulation of map projections where, by more complex mathematics yielding formulas readily handled by modern computers, it is possible to maintain the conformal property and minimise scale distortion over the total extent of a country area regardless of shape. Thus both North and South Islands of New Zealand, previously treated not very satisfactorily in two zones of a Transverse Mercator projection, can now be projected as one zone of what resembles most closely a curved version Oblique Mercator but which, instead of being based on a minimum scale factor straight central line, has a central line which is a complex curve roughly following the trend of both North and South Islands. The projected coordinate reference system achieves this by a form of double projection where a conformal projection of the ellipsoid is first made to say an oblique Stereographic projection and then the Cauchy-Riemann equations are invoked in order to further project the rectangular coordinates on this to a modification in which lines of constant scale can be made to follow other than the normal great or small circles of Central meridians or standard parallels. The mathematical treatment of the New Zealand Map Grid is covered by a publication by New Zealand Department of Lands and Survey Technical Circular 1973/32 by I.F.Stirling.

### **1.3.9 Tunisia Mining Grid**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9816)

This grid is used as the basis for mineral leasing in Tunisia. Lease areas are approximately 2 x 2 km or 400 hectares. The corners of these blocks are defined through a six figure grid reference where the first three digits are an easting in kilometres and the last three digits are a northing. The latitudes and longitudes for block corners at 2 km intervals are tabulated in a mining decree dated 1<sup>st</sup> January 1953. From this tabulation in which geographic coordinates are given to 5 decimal places it can be seen that:

- a) the minimum easting is 94 km, on which the longitude is 5.68989 grads east of Paris.
- b) the maximum easting is 490 km, on which the longitude is 10.51515 grads east of Paris.
- c) each 2 km grid easting interval equals 0.02437 grads.
- d) the minimum northing is 40 km, on which the latitude is 33.39 grads.
- e) the maximum northing is 860 km, on which the latitude is 41.6039 grads.
- f) between 40 km N and 360 km N, each 2 km grid northing interval equals 0.02004 grads.
- g) between 360 km N and 860 km N, each 2 km grid northing interval equals 0.02003 grads.

This grid could be considered to be two equidistant cylindrical projection zones, north and south of the 360 km northing line. However this would require the introduction of two spheres of unique dimensions. OGP has therefore implemented the Tunisia mining grid as a coordinate conversion method in its own right. Formulas are:

#### Grads from Paris

$$\varphi \text{ (grads)} = 36.5964 + [(N - 360) * A]$$

where N is in kilometres and A = 0.010015 if N > 360, else A = 0.01002.

$$\lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ (grads)} = 7.83445 + [(E - 270) * 0.012185], \text{ where E is in kilometres.}$$

The reverse formulas are:

$E \text{ (km)} = 270 + [(\lambda_{\text{Paris}} - 7.83445) / 0.012185]$  where  $\lambda_{\text{Paris}}$  is in grads.

$N \text{ (km)} = 360 + [(\varphi - 36.5964) / B]$

where  $\varphi$  is in grads and  $B = 0.010015$  if  $\varphi > 36.5964$ , else  $B = 0.01002$ .

### Degrees from Greenwich

Modern practice in Tunisia is to quote latitude and longitude in degrees with longitudes referenced to the Greenwich meridian. The formulas required in addition to the above are:

$\varphi_d \text{ (degrees)} = (\varphi_g * 0.9)$  where  $\varphi_g$  is in grads.

$\lambda_{\text{Greenwich}} \text{ (degrees)} = [(\lambda_{\text{Paris}} + 2.5969213) * 0.9]$  where  $\lambda_{\text{Paris}}$  is in grads.

$\varphi_g \text{ (grads)} = (\varphi_d / 0.9)$  where  $\varphi_d$  is in decimal degrees.

$\lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ (grads)} = [(\lambda_{\text{Greenwich}} / 0.9) - 2.5969213]$  where  $\lambda_{\text{Greenwich}}$  is in decimal degrees.

### **Example:**

For grid location 302598,

Latitude  $\varphi = 36.5964 + [(598 - 360) * A]$ . As  $N > 360$ ,  $A = 0.010015$ .

$\varphi = 38.97997$  grads = 35.08197 degrees.

Longitude  $\lambda = 7.83445 + [(E - 270) * 0.012185]$ , where  $E = 302$ .

$\lambda = 8.22437$  grads east of Paris = 9.73916 degrees east of Greenwich.

### **1.3.10 American Polyconic**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9818)

This projection was popular before the advent of modern computers due to its ease of mechanical construction, particularly in the United States. It is neither conformal nor equal area, and is distortion-free only along the longitude of origin. A modified form of the polyconic projection was adopted in 1909 for the International Map of the World series of 1/1,000,000 scale topographic maps. A general study of the polyconic family of projections by Oscar Adams of the US Geological Survey was published in 1919 (and reprinted in 1934).

The formulas to derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

If  $\varphi = 0$ :

Easting,  $E = FE + a(\lambda - \lambda_0)$

Northing,  $N = FN - M_0$

If  $\varphi$  is not zero:

Easting,  $E = FE + v \cot\varphi \sin L$

Northing,  $N = FN + M - M_0 + v \cot\varphi(1 - \cos L)$

where  $L = (\lambda - \lambda_0)\sin\varphi$

$v = a / (1 - e^2\sin^2\varphi)^{0.5}$

$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse formulas to convert Easting and Northing projected coordinates to latitude and longitude require iteration. This iteration will not converge if  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) > 90^\circ$  but the projection should not be used in that range.

First  $M_0$  is calculated using the formula for M given in the forward case. Then:

If  $M_0 = (N-FN)$  then:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= 0 \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0 + (E-FE)/a\end{aligned}$$

If  $M_0$  does not equal  $(N-FN)$  then:

$$\begin{aligned}A &= [M_0 + (N-FN)] / a \\ B &= A^2 + \{[(E-FE)^2] / a^2\}\end{aligned}$$

$$C = (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_n)^{0.5} \tan \varphi_n \text{ initially using } \varphi_n = A \text{ for the first iteration}$$

M is found

$$H = Mn$$

$$J = H / a$$

$$\varphi'' = \varphi' - [A(CJ + 1) - J - 0.5C(J^2 + B)] / \{e^2 \sin 2\varphi' (J^2 + B - 2AJ) / 4C + (A - J) (CH - [2 / \sin 2\varphi']) - H\}$$

Then after solution of  $\varphi$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \{a \sin[(E-FE) C / a]\} / \sin \varphi$$

### Example

Examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5107 of the Test Dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 1.3.11 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9820)

#### Oblique aspect

To derive the projected coordinates of a point, geodetic latitude ( $\varphi$ ) is converted to authalic latitude ( $\beta$ ). The formulae to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting and Northing are:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + \{(B * D) [\cos \beta \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\}$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + (B / D) \{(\cos \beta_0 \sin \beta) - [\sin \beta_0 \cos \beta \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\}$$

where

$$B = R_q (2 / \{1 + \sin \beta_0 \sin \beta + [\cos \beta_0 \cos \beta \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\})^{0.5}$$

$$D = a [\cos \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}] / (R_q \cos \beta_0)$$

$$R_q = a (q_p / 2)^{0.5}$$

$$\beta = \text{asin}(q / q_p)$$

$$\beta_0 = \text{asin}(q_0 / q_p)$$

$$q = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]\}\}$$

$$q_0 = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)]\}\}$$

$$q_p = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi_p / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_p)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_p) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_p)]\}\}$$

where  $\varphi_p = \pi/2$  radians, thus

$$q_p = (1 - e^2) \{[1 / (1 - e^2)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\}\}$$

The reverse formulas to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\varphi = \beta' + [(e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2\beta'] + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4\beta'] + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6\beta']$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{atan} \{ (E-FE) \sin C / [D \rho \cos \beta_0 \cos C - D^2 (N-FN) \sin \beta_0 \sin C] \}$$

where

$$\beta' = \text{asin} \{ (\cos C \sin \beta_0) + [(D (N-FN) \sin C \cos \beta_0) / \rho] \}$$

$$C = 2 \text{ asin}(\rho / 2 R_q)$$

$$\rho = \{ [(E-FE)/D]^2 + [D (N-FN)]^2 \}^{0.5}$$

and D, R<sub>q</sub>, and β<sub>0</sub> are as in the forward equations.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: ETRS89 / ETRS-LAEA

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: GRS 1980 a = 6378137.0 metres 1/f = 298.2572221  
 then e = 0.081819191

Latitude of natural origin	φ <sub>0</sub>	52°00'00.000"N	=	0.907571211 rad
Longitude of natural origin	λ <sub>0</sub>	10°00'00.000"E	=	0.174532925 rad
False easting	FE	4321000.00	metres	
False northing	FN	3210000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	φ	=	50°00'00.000"N	=	0.872664626 rad
Longitude	λ	=	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.087266463 rad

First gives

q <sub>p</sub>	=	1.995531087	q <sub>0</sub>	=	1.569825704
q	=	1.525832247	R <sub>q</sub>	=	6371007.181
β <sub>0</sub>	=	0.905397517	β	=	0.870458708
D	=	1.000425395	B	=	6374393.455

whence

E = 3962799.45 m  
 N = 2999718.85 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (3962799.45 E, 2999718.85 N) first gives:

ρ = 415276.208  
 C = 0.065193736  
 β' = 0.870458708

Then Latitude φ = 50°00'00.000"N  
 Longitude λ = 5°00'00.000"E

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5110 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### Polar aspect

For the polar aspect of the Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area projection, some of the above equations are indeterminate. Instead, for the forward case from latitude and longitude (φ, λ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N):

For the north polar case:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + [\rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN - [\rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]$$

where

$$\rho = a (q_p - q)^{0.5}$$

and  $q_p$  and  $q$  are found as for the general case above.

For the south polar case:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + [\rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + [\rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]$$

where

$$\rho = a (q_p + q)^{0.5}$$

and  $q_p$  and  $q$  are found as for the general case above.

For the reverse formulas to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing:

$$\varphi = \beta' + [(e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2\beta'] + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4\beta'] + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6\beta']$$

as for the oblique case, but where

$$\beta' = \pm \text{asin} [1 - \rho^2 / (a^2 \{1 - [(1 - e^2)/2e] \ln[(1 - e)/(1 + e)]\})], \text{ taking the sign of } \varphi_0$$

$$\text{and } \rho = \{[(E - FE)]^2 + [(N - FN)]^2\}^{0.5}$$

Then

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (N - FN)] \text{ for the south pole case}$$

and

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / -(N - FN)] = \lambda_0 + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (FN - N)] \text{ for the north pole case.}$$

### **1.3.11.1 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1027)

The US National Atlas uses the spherical form of the oblique case, so exceptionally OGP includes this method in the EPSG dataset. See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas and example.

$R$  is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then  $R$  should be calculated as the radius of the authalic sphere using the formula for  $R_A$  given in section 1.2 of this Guidance Note, table 3. Note however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the authalic projection properties are not preserved.

### **1.3.12 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9835)

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas and example.

#### **1.3.12.1 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9834)

For the forward calculation for the normal aspect of the projection in which  $\varphi_1$  is the latitude of the standard parallel:

$$E = FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos(\varphi_1)$$

$$N = FN + R \sin(\varphi) / \cos(\varphi_1)$$

where  $\varphi_1$ ,  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are expressed in radians

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the authalic sphere using the formula for  $R_A$  given in section 1.2, table 3.

For the reverse calculation:

$$\varphi = \text{asin}\{[(N - FN) / R] \cos(\varphi_1)\}$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \{[E - FE] / [R \cos(\varphi_1)]\}$$

where R is as for the forward method.

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas for oblique and polar aspects and examples.

### 1.3.13 Albers Equal Area

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9822)

To derive the projected coordinates of a point, geodetic latitude ( $\varphi$ ) is converted to authalic latitude ( $\beta$ ). The formulas to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) are:

$$\text{Easting (E)} = E_F + (\rho \sin \theta)$$

$$\text{Northing (N)} = N_F + \rho_0 - (\rho \cos \theta)$$

where

$$\theta = n (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$\rho = [a (C - n \alpha)^{0.5}] / n$$

$$\rho_0 = [a (C - n \alpha_0)^{0.5}] / n$$

and

$$C = m_1^2 + (n \alpha_1)$$

$$n = (m_1^2 - m_2^2) / (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1)$$

$$m_1 = \cos \varphi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

$$m_2 = \cos \varphi_2 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_2)^{0.5}$$

$$\alpha = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]\}$$

$$\alpha_0 = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)]\}$$

$$\alpha_1 = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_1) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_1)]\}$$

$$\alpha_2 = (1 - e^2) \{[\sin \varphi_2 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_2)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_2) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_2)]\}$$

The reverse formulas to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\varphi = \beta' + (e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2\beta' + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4\beta' + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6\beta']$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + (\theta / n)$$

where

$$\beta' = \text{asin}(\alpha' / \{1 - [(1 - e^2) / (2 e)] \ln [(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\})$$

$$\alpha' = [C - (\rho^2 n^2 / a^2)] / n$$

$$\rho = \{(E - E_F)^2 + [\rho_0 - (N - N_F)]^2\}^{0.5}$$

$$\theta = \text{atan} [(E - E_F) / [\rho_0 - (N - N_F)]]$$

and C, n and  $\rho_0$  are as in the forward equations.

**Example**

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for an example including values of intermediate variables. Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5109 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

**1.3.14 Equidistant Cylindrical**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1028)

The characteristics of the Equidistant Cylindrical projection are that the scale is true along two standard parallels equidistant from the equator (or at the equator if that is the standard parallel) and along the meridians. The formulas usually given for this method employ spherical equations with a mean radius of curvature sphere calculated from the latitude of standard parallel. This is a compromise, often satisfactory for the low resolution purposes to which it is put. However in the spherical implementation the distance is not true along the meridians nor along the standard parallel(s). Spherical formulas are given in section 1.13.14.1 below.

The ellipsoidal forward equations to convert latitude and longitude to easting and northing are

$$E = FE + v_1 \cos \varphi_1 (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = FN + M$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5} \text{ (see section 1.2 table 3)}$$

and

$$M = a(1 - e^2) \int_0^\varphi (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{-\frac{1}{2}} d\varphi \tag{1}$$

or

$$M = a \left[ \int_0^\varphi (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\varphi - e^2 \sin \varphi \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right] \tag{2}$$

The first calculation (1) of M above contains an elliptic integral of the third kind. The alternative calculation (2) of M contains an elliptic integral of the second kind. If software supports the functions for these integrals, then the functions can be used directly. Otherwise, the value of M can be computed through a series equation. The following series equation is adequate for any ellipsoid with a flattening of 1/290 or less, which covers all earth-based ellipsoids of record.

$$M = a \left[ \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4} e^2 - \frac{3}{64} e^4 - \frac{5}{256} e^6 - \frac{175}{16384} e^8 - \frac{441}{65536} e^{10} - \frac{4851}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{14157}{4194304} e^{14} \right) \varphi \right. \\ + \left( -\frac{3}{8} e^2 - \frac{3}{32} e^4 - \frac{45}{1024} e^6 - \frac{105}{4096} e^8 - \frac{2205}{131072} e^{10} - \frac{6237}{524288} e^{12} - \frac{297297}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 2\varphi \\ + \left( \frac{15}{256} e^4 + \frac{45}{1024} e^6 + \frac{525}{16384} e^8 + \frac{1575}{65536} e^{10} + \frac{155925}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{495495}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 4\varphi \\ + \left( -\frac{35}{3072} e^6 - \frac{175}{12288} e^8 - \frac{3675}{262144} e^{10} - \frac{13475}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{385385}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 6\varphi \\ + \left( \frac{315}{131072} e^8 + \frac{2205}{524288} e^{10} + \frac{43659}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{189189}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 8\varphi \\ + \left( -\frac{693}{1310720} e^{10} - \frac{6237}{5242880} e^{12} - \frac{297297}{167772160} e^{14} \right) \sin 10\varphi \\ + \left( \frac{1001}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{11011}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 12\varphi \\ \left. + \left( -\frac{6435}{234881024} e^{14} \right) \sin 14\varphi \right]$$

The inverse equations are

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + X / (v_1 \cos \varphi_1) = \lambda_0 + X (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{1/2} / (a \cos \varphi_1)$$

$$\varphi = \mu + \left( \frac{3}{2} n - \frac{27}{32} n^3 + \frac{269}{512} n^5 - \frac{6607}{24576} n^7 \right) \sin 2\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{21}{16} n^2 - \frac{55}{32} n^4 + \frac{6759}{4096} n^6 \right) \sin 4\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{151}{96} n^3 - \frac{417}{128} n^5 + \frac{87963}{20480} n^7 \right) \sin 6\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{1097}{512} n^4 - \frac{15543}{2560} n^6 \right) \sin 8\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{8011}{2560} n^5 - \frac{69119}{6144} n^7 \right) \sin 10\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{293393}{61440} n^6 \right) \sin 12\mu$$

$$+ \left( \frac{6845701}{860160} n^7 \right) \sin 14\mu$$

where

$$X = E - FE$$

$$Y = N - FN$$

$$\mu = Y / \left[ a \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4} e^2 - \frac{3}{64} e^4 - \frac{5}{256} e^6 - \frac{175}{16384} e^8 - \frac{441}{65536} e^{10} - \frac{4851}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{14157}{4194304} e^{14} \right) \right]$$

$$n = \frac{1 - (1 - e^2)^{1/2}}{1 + (1 - e^2)^{1/2}}$$

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS84 / World Equidistant Cylindrical Parameters:

Ellipsoid: WGS 1984    a = 6378137.0 metres    1/f = 298.257223563  
 then    e = 0.08181919084262

Latitude of first standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	=	0°00'00.000"N	=	0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	=	0°00'00.000"E	=	0.0 rad
False easting	FE	=	0.00	metres	
False northing	FN	=	0.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude     $\varphi$     =    55°00'00.000"N    =    0.959931086 rad  
 Longitude     $\lambda$     =    10°00'00.000"E    =    0.174532925 rad

First gives

Radius of curvature in prime vertical at  $\varphi_1$      $v_1$  =    6378137.0  
 Radius of curvature of parallel at  $\varphi_1$      $v_1 \cos \varphi_1$  =    6378137.0  
 Meridional arc distance from equator to  $\varphi$     M =    6097230.3131

whence

E = 1113194.91 m  
 N = 6097230.31 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (1113194.91 E, 6097230.31 N) first gives:

Rectifying latitude (radians)     $\mu$  =    0.9575624671  
 Second flattening    n =    0.001679220386

Then    Latitude     $\varphi$     =    55°00'00.000"N  
          Longitude     $\lambda$     =    10°00'00.000"E

### **1.3.14.1 Equidistant Cylindrical (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1029)

This method has one of the simplest formulas available. If the latitude of natural origin ( $\varphi_1$ ) is at the equator the method is also known as Plate Carrée. It is not used for rigorous topographic mapping because its distortion characteristics are unsuitable. Formulas are included to distinguish this map projection method from an approach sometimes mistakenly called by the same name and used for simple computer display of geographic coordinates – see Pseudo Plate Carrée below.

For the forward calculation of the Equidistant Cylindrical method:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos(\varphi_1) \\ N &= FN + R \varphi \end{aligned}$$

where  $\varphi_1$ ,  $\lambda_0$ ,  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are expressed in radians.

$R$  is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then  $R$  should be calculated as the radius of the conformal sphere at the projection origin at latitude  $\varphi_1$  using the formula for  $R_C$  given in section 1.2, table 3, of this document. Note however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the equidistant projection properties are not preserved.

For the reverse calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= (N - FN) / R \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0 + \{[E - FE] / [R \cos(\varphi_1)]\} \end{aligned}$$

where  $R$  is as for the forward method.

### **1.3.14.2 Pseudo Plate Carrée**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9825)

This is not a map projection in the true sense as the coordinate system units are angular (for example, decimal degrees) and therefore of variable linear scale. It is used only for depiction of graticule (latitude/longitude) coordinates on a computer display. The origin is at latitude ( $\varphi$ ) = 0, longitude ( $\lambda$ ) = 0. See above for the formulas for the proper Plate Carrée map projection method.

For the forward calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} X &= \lambda \\ Y &= \varphi \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= Y \\ \lambda &= X \end{aligned}$$

### 1.3.15 Bonne

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9827)

The Bonne projection was frequently adopted for 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> century mapping, but being equal area rather than conformal its use for topographic mapping was replaced during the 20<sup>th</sup> century by conformal map projection methods.

The formulas to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting and Northing are:

$$E = (\rho \sin T) + FE$$

$$N = (a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - \rho \cos T) + FN$$

where

$$m = \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $m_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

$$\rho = a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 + M_0 - M$$

$$T = a m (\lambda - \lambda_0) / \rho \quad \text{with } \lambda \text{ and } \lambda_0 \text{ in radians}$$

For the reverse calculation:

$$X = E - FE$$

$$Y = N - FN$$

$$\rho = \pm [X^2 + (a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - Y)^2]^{0.5} \quad \text{taking the sign of } \varphi_0$$

$$M = a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 + M_0 - \rho$$

$$\mu = M / [a (1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\varphi = \mu + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots)\sin 2\mu + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots)\sin 4\mu + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots)\sin 6\mu + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots)\sin 8\mu + \dots$$

$$m = \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

If  $\varphi_0$  is not negative

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \rho \{ \text{atan}[X / (a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - Y)] \} / a m$$

but if  $\varphi_0$  is negative

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \rho \{ \text{atan}[-X / (Y - a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0)] \} / a m$$

In either case, if  $\varphi = \pm 90^\circ$ ,  $m = 0$  and the equation for  $\lambda$  is indeterminate, so use  $\lambda = \lambda_0$ .

#### 1.3.15.1 Bonne (South Orientated)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9828)

In Portugal a special case of the method with coordinate system axes positive south and west has been used for older mapping. The formulas are as for the general case above except:

$$W = FE - (\rho \sin T)$$

$$S = FN - (a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - \rho \cos T)$$

In these formulas the terms FE and FN retain their definition, i.e. in the Bonne (South Orientated) method they increase the Westing and Southing value at the natural origin. In this method they are effectively false westing (FW) and false southing (FS) respectively.

For the reverse formulas, those for the standard Bonne method above apply, with the exception that:

$$X = FE - W$$

$$Y = FN - S$$

### 1.3.16 Azimuthal Equidistant

#### 1.3.16.1 Modified Azimuthal Equidistant

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9832)

For various islands in Micronesia the US National Geodetic Survey has developed formulae for the oblique form of the ellipsoidal projection which calculates distance from the origin along a normal section rather than the geodesic. For the distances over which these projections are used (under 800km) this modification introduces no significant error.

First calculate a constant for the projection:

$$v_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{1/2}$$

Then the forward conversion from latitude and longitude is given by:

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2}$$

$$\psi = \text{atan} [(1 - e^2) \tan \varphi + e^2 v_0 \sin \varphi_0 / (v \cos \varphi)]$$

$$\alpha = \text{atan} \{ \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) / [\cos \varphi_0 \tan \psi - \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] \}$$

$$G = e \sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2)^{1/2}$$

$$H = e \cos \varphi_0 \cos \alpha / (1 - e^2)^{1/2}$$

Then

$$\text{if } (\sin \alpha) = 0, s = \text{asin} (\cos \varphi_0 \sin \psi - \sin \varphi_0 \cos \psi) * \text{SIGN}(\cos \alpha)$$

$$\text{if } (\sin \alpha) \neq 0, s = \text{asin} [\sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \psi / \sin \alpha]$$

and in either case

$$c = v_0 s \{ [1 - s^2 H^2 (1 - H^2) / 6] + [(s^3 / 8)GH(1 - 2H^2)] + (s^4 / 120)[H^2(4 - 7H^2) - 3G^2(1 - 7H^2)] - [(s^5 / 48)GH] \}$$

Then

$$E = FE + c \sin \alpha$$

$$N = FN + c \cos \alpha$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude:

$$c' = [(E - FE)^2 + (N - FN)^2]^{0.5}$$

$$\alpha' = \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (N - FN)]$$

$$A = -e^2 \cos^2 \varphi_0 \cos^2 \alpha' / (1 - e^2)$$

$$B = 3e^2 (1 - A) \sin \varphi_0 \cos \varphi_0 \cos \alpha' / (1 - e^2)$$

$$D = c' / v_0$$

$$J = D - [A (1 + A) D^3 / 6] - [B (1 + 3A) D^4 / 24]$$

$$K = 1 - (A J^2 / 2) - (B J^3 / 6)$$

$$\Psi' = \text{asin} (\sin \varphi_0 \cos J + \cos \varphi_0 \sin J \cos \alpha')$$

Then

$$\varphi = \text{atan} [(1 - e^2 K \sin \varphi_0 / \sin \Psi') \tan \Psi' / (1 - e^2)]$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{asin} (\sin \alpha' \sin J / \cos \Psi')$$

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Guam 1963 / Yap Islands

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	a = 6378206.400 metres	1/f = 294.97870
	then	e = 0.08227185	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00676866
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	9°32'48.15"N	= 0.166621493 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	138°10'07.48"E	= 2.411499514 rad
False easting	FE	40000.00 metres	
False northing	FN	60000.00 metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	9°35'47.493"N	=	0.167490973 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	138°11'34.908"E	=	2.411923377 rad

First gives

$v_0$ =	6378800.24	G =	0.013691332
$v$ =	6378806.40	H =	0.073281276
$\psi$ =	0.167485249	s =	0.000959566
$\alpha$ =	0.450640866	c =	6120.88

whence

E	=	42665.90
N	=	65509.82

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (42665.90 m E, 65509.82 m N) first gives:

$c'$ =	6120.88	D =	0.000959566
$\alpha'$ =	0.450640866	J =	0.000959566
A =	-0.005370145	K =	1.000000002
B =	0.003026119	$\Psi'$ =	0.167485249

whence

$\varphi$	=	0.167490973 rad	=	9°35'47.493"N
$\lambda$	=	2.411923377 rad	=	138°11'34.908"E

**1.3.16.2 Guam Projection**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9831)

The Guam projection is a simplified form of the oblique case of the azimuthal equidistant projection. For the Guam projection the forward conversion from latitude and longitude is given by:

$$x = a (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \varphi / [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{(1/2)}]$$

$$E = FE + x$$

$$N = FN + M - M_0 + \{x^2 \tan \varphi [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\}$$

where

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the natural origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude requires iteration of three equations. The Guam projection uses three iterations, which is satisfactory over the small area of application. First  $M_0$  for the latitude of the origin  $\varphi_0$  is derived as for the forward conversion. Then:

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

and

$$M' = M_0 + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \phi_0 [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi_0)^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\}$$

$$\mu' = M' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)$$

$$\phi' = \mu' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu') + (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu')$$

$$M'' = M_0 + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \phi' [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi')^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\}$$

$$\mu'' = M'' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)$$

$$\phi'' = \mu'' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu'') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu'') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu'') + (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu'')$$

$$M''' = M_0 + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \phi'' [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi'')^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\}$$

$$\mu''' = M''' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)$$

$$\phi''' = \mu''' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu''') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu''') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu''') + (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu''')$$

Then

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \{(E - FE) [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi''')^{(1/2)}] / (a \cos \phi''')\}$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Guam 1963 / Guam SPCS

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	a = 6378206.400 metres	1/f = 294.97870
	then	e = 0.08227185	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00676866

Latitude of natural origin	$\phi_0$	13°28'20.87887"N	= 0.235138896 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	144°44'55.50254"E	= 2.526342288 rad
False easting	FE	50000.00 metres	
False northing	FN	50000.00 metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\phi$	= 13°20'20.53846"N	= 0.232810140 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 144°38'07.19265"E	= 2.524362746 rad

x	=	-12287.52 m
M <sub>0</sub>	=	1489888.76 m
M	=	1475127.96 m

whence

E	=	37,712.48 m
N	=	35,242.00 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (37,712.48 m E, 35,242.00 m N) first gives:

M <sub>0</sub>	=	1489888.76 m
e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.001697916

and

	<u>M (metres)</u>	<u><math>\mu</math> (radians)</u>	<u><math>\phi</math> (radians)</u>	
First iteration:	1475127.93	0.231668814	0.232810136	
Second iteration:	1475127.96	0.231668819	0.232810140	
Third iteration:	1475127.96	0.231668819	0.232810140	= 13°20'20.538"N

Then

$$\lambda = 2.524362746 \text{ rad} = 144^\circ 38' 07.193'' \text{E}$$

### 1.3.17 Perspectives

#### 1.3.17.1 Introduction

Geophysical and reservoir interpretation and visualisation systems now work in a 3D "cube" offering continuous, scaleable, viewing and mapping in a single Cartesian 3D coordinate system. Subsurface mapping historically has been undertaken in pseudo-3D coordinate reference systems consisting of a vertical component together with an independent horizontal component which had to be changed to maintain cartographic correctness over large areas. Map projections are inherently distorted. Typically, distances and areas measured on the map-grid only approximate their true values. Over small areas near the projection origin, the distortions can be managed to be within acceptable limits. But it is impossible to map large areas without significant distortion. This creates problems when there is a requirement to map areas beyond the limits of a map zone, typically overcome by moving to another zone.

The motivation here is to offer a method of overcoming these limitations by describing geodetically well-defined CRSs that can be implemented in 3D within a visualisation environment and can be scaled (from reservoirs to regions) without distortion. There are three components:

- the use of geodetically rigorous 3D geocentric and topocentric coordinates, the relationship of which to geographic coordinates is described in section 2.2;
- perspective realizations of topocentric coordinates in 2D (sections 1.3.17.2 and 1.3.17.3);
- an ellipsoidal development of the orthographic projection (section 1.3.18). This 2D representation contains the quantifiable mapping distortions inherent in this projection method.

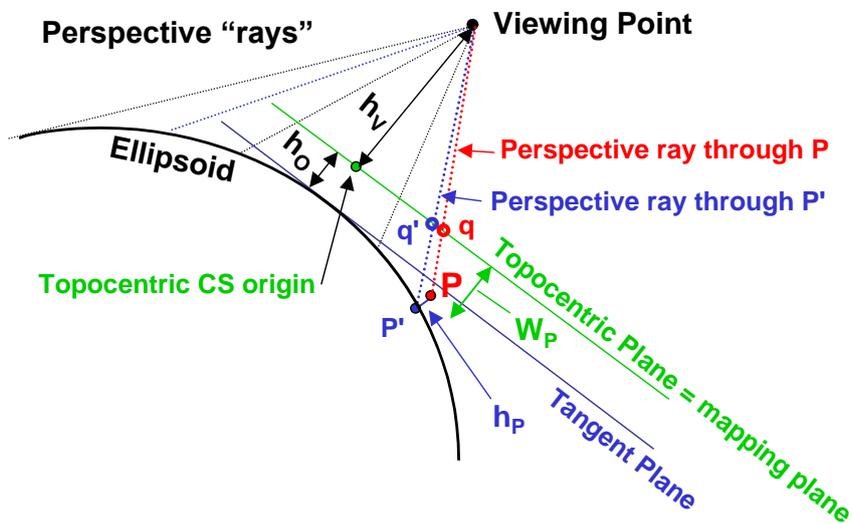


Figure 11 – Vertical perspective

Classical map projections map 2D latitude and longitude onto the plane. With reference to figure 11 above, point P at a height  $h_p$  above the ellipsoid is first reduced to the ellipsoid surface at P', and P' is then mapped onto the mapping plane at q'. The height of the point is not material.

In contrast, perspectives map points on, above or below the surface of the ellipsoid onto the mapping plane; point P is mapped onto the mapping plane at q. The height of a point above or depth below the surface of the ellipsoid will change the horizontal coordinates at which the point maps. Perspectives are a view of the Earth from space without regard to cartographic properties such as conformality or equality of area.

Perspectives can be classified as vertical or tilted. Consider a point anywhere on the ellipsoid, a plane tangent to the ellipsoid at that point, and a perpendicular to the ellipsoid (and the tangent plane) at that point. Vertical perspectives are the view of the Earth from a point on the perpendicular through a mapping plane which is either the tangent plane or a plane parallel to the tangent plane. Tilted perspectives are the view from a point which is not on the perpendicular. Tilted perspectives are not considered further in this guidance note.

In addition to vertical and tilted, perspectives can be classified as positive or negative. Perspectives with a positive viewing height  $h_v$  are the view of the Earth from above, as from a satellite or from another celestial body (and as shown in figure 11). Perspectives with a negative viewing height  $h_v$  are the “view” of the Earth from below, which is mathematically but not physically possible. The mapping equations, however, are identical; only the sign of one term (the viewing height,  $h_v$ ) differs. The viewing point cannot be on the mapping plane.

In this development vertical perspectives are based upon topocentric coordinates that are valid for an ellipsoidal Earth. The introduction of an intermediate topocentric coordinate system (see Section 2.2) simplifies the mathematical exposition of vertical perspectives. In such a topocentric Cartesian coordinate system, two of the three axes represent the horizontal plane. A change of perspective (zooming in and out) is achieved by moving the viewing point along the perpendicular. The mapping plane is the plane parallel to the tangent plane which passes through the topocentric origin (rather than the tangent plane itself). In the special case of the topocentric origin being on the ellipsoid surface then the mapping plane will be the tangent plane.

### **1.3.17.2 Vertical Perspective**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9838)

This general case deals with a viewing point at a finite height above the origin. If the viewing point is at infinity ( $h_v = \infty$ ), the formulas for the orthographic case given in the next section should be used.

The forward equations for the Vertical Perspective to convert geographic 3D coordinates ( $\phi, \lambda, h$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) begin with the methods of Section 2.2.3 to convert the geographic coordinates to topocentric coordinates U, V, W. The perspective projection origin is coincident with the topographic origin and has coordinates ( $\phi_0, \lambda_0, h_0$ ). As in Section 2.2.3:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= (v + h) \cos \phi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ V &= (v + h) [\sin \phi \cos \phi_0 - \cos \phi \sin \phi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \phi_0 - v \sin \phi) \cos \phi_0 \\ W &= (v + h) [\sin \phi \sin \phi_0 + \cos \phi \cos \phi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \phi_0 - v \sin \phi) \sin \phi_0 - (v_0 + h_0) \end{aligned}$$

Then, given the height  $h_v$  of the perspective viewing point above the origin, the perspective coordinates (E, N) are calculated from topocentric coordinates (U, V, W) as:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= U h_v / (h_v - W) \\ N &= V h_v / (h_v - W) \end{aligned}$$

The reverse calculation from E,N to U,V,W and  $\phi, \lambda, h$  is indeterminate.

#### **Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Vertical Perspective example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	$a = 6378137.0$ metres	$1/f = 298.2572236$
	then	$e = 0.081819191$	

Topographic origin latitude	$\varphi_0$	=	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
Topographic origin longitude	$\lambda_0$	=	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
Topographic origin ellipsoidal height	$h_0$	=	200 metres		
Height of viewpoint	$h_v$	=	5 900 kilometers		

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.939151101 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.037167659 rad
Ellipsoidal height	$h$	=	73 metres		

$$e^2 = 0.006694380$$

$$v_0 = 6392\,510.73 \text{ m}$$

$$v = 6392\,088.02 \text{ m}$$

$$U = -189\,013.869 \text{ m}$$

$$V = -128\,642.040 \text{ m}$$

$$W = -4\,220.171 \text{ m}$$

Then,

$$E = -188\,878.767 \text{ m}$$

$$N = -128\,550.090 \text{ m}$$

### 1.3.17.3 Vertical Perspective (orthographic case)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9839)

The orthographic vertical perspective is a special case of the vertical perspective with the viewing point at infinity ( $h_v = \infty$ ). Therefore, all projection "rays" are parallel to one another and all are perpendicular to the tangent plane. Since the rays are parallel, coordinates in the tangent-plane are the same in any other parallel mapping plane, i.e. are consistent for any value of  $h_0$ , which therefore becomes irrelevant to the forward formulas.

The orthographic vertical perspective forward conversion from 3D geographic coordinates latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height ( $\varphi, \lambda, h$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) is given by:

$$E = U = \lim_{h_v \rightarrow \infty} (U h_v / (h_v - W), h_v \rightarrow \infty)$$

$$N = V = \lim_{h_v \rightarrow \infty} (V h_v / (h_v - W), h_v \rightarrow \infty)$$

where, as in Sections 2.2.3 and 1.3.17.2:

$$U = (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$V = (v + h) [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0$$

The reverse calculation from E,N to U,V,W and  $\varphi, \lambda, h$  is indeterminate.

#### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Vertical Perspective (Orthographic case) example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	$a = 6378137.0$ metres	$1/f = 298.2572236$
	then	$e = 0.081819191$	

Topographic origin latitude	$\varphi_0$	=	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
Topographic origin longitude	$\lambda_0$	=	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
Topographic origin ellipsoidal height	$h_0$	=	200 metres		

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.939151101 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.037167659 rad
Ellipsoidal height	$h$	=	73 metres		

The projection origin and example point are the same as those used in the general case of the Vertical Perspective in the previous section. Note that the ellipsoidal height at the point to be converted ( $h$ ) is 73 metres. The ellipsoidal height at the topocentric center ( $h_0$ ) is not used in any of the equations for the numerical examples that follow. But  $h_0$  will be used for the reverse case if  $W$  is known (for which a numerical example can be found in Section 2.2.3).

$$e^2 = 0.006694380$$

$$v_0 = 6392\,510.727 \text{ m}$$

$$v = 6392\,088.017 \text{ m}$$

Then,

$$E = -189013.869 \text{ m}$$

$$N = -128642.040 \text{ m}$$

### 1.3.18 Orthographic

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9840)

Most cartographic texts which describe the orthographic projection do so using a spherical development. This section describes an ellipsoidal development. This allows the projected coordinates to be consistent with those for the vertical perspectives described in the previous section (1.3.17). If the projection origin is at the topocentric origin, the ellipsoidal Orthographic Projection is a special case of the orthographic vertical perspective in which the ellipsoid height of all mapped points is zero ( $h = 0$ ). The projection is neither conformal nor equal-area, but near the point of tangency there is no significant distortion. Within 90km of the origin the scale change is less than 1 part in 10,000.

The Orthographic projection forward conversion from 2D geographic coordinates latitude and longitude ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ) and the origin on the ellipsoid ( $\varphi_0$ ,  $\lambda_0$ ) is given by:

$$E = FE + v \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = FN + v [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0$$

where

$v$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude  $\varphi$ ;  $v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$ ,  
 $v_0$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude of origin  $\varphi_0$ ;  $v_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}$ ,  
 $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid and  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$   
 $a$  and  $b$  are the ellipsoidal semi-major and semi-minor axes,  
 $1/f$  is the inverse flattening, and  
the latitude and longitude of the projection origin are  $\varphi_0$  and  $\lambda_0$ .

These formulas are similar to those for the orthographic case of the vertical perspective (section 1.3.17.3) except that, for the Orthographic projection given here,  $h = 0$  and the term  $(v + h)$  reduces to  $v$ . The projection origin is at the topocentric system origin  $\varphi_0$ ,  $\lambda_0$  with false origin coordinates  $FE$  and  $FN$ .

For the reverse formulas for latitude and longitude corresponding to a given Easting (E) and Northing (N), iteration is required as the prime vertical radius (v) is a function of latitude.

Begin by seeding the iteration with the center of projection (or some better guess):

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= \varphi_0 \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0\end{aligned}$$

Enter the iteration here with the (next) best estimates of  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$ . Then solve for the radii of curvature in the prime vertical (v) and meridian ( $\rho$ ):

$$\begin{aligned}v &= a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{0.5} \\ \rho &= a (1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{1.5}\end{aligned}$$

Compute test values of E and N (E' and N') using the forward equations:

$$\begin{aligned}E' &= FE + v \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N' &= FN + v [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0\end{aligned}$$

Partially differentiate the forward equations to solve for the elements of the Jacobian matrix:

$$\begin{aligned}J_{11} &= \partial E / \partial \varphi = -\rho \sin \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ J_{12} &= \partial E / \partial \lambda = v \cos \varphi \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ J_{21} &= \partial N / \partial \varphi = \rho (\cos \varphi \cos \varphi_0 + \sin \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)) \\ J_{22} &= \partial N / \partial \lambda = v \sin \varphi_0 \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)\end{aligned}$$

Solve for the determinant of the Jacobian:

$$D = J_{11} J_{22} - J_{12} J_{21}$$

Solve the northerly and easterly differences this iteration:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta E &= E - E' \\ \Delta N &= N - N'\end{aligned}$$

Adjust the latitude and longitude for the next iteration by inverting the Jacobian and multiplying by the differences:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= \varphi + (J_{22} \Delta E - J_{12} \Delta N) / D \\ \lambda &= \lambda + (-J_{21} \Delta E + J_{11} \Delta N) / D\end{aligned}$$

Return to the entry point with new estimates of latitude and longitude and iterate until the change in  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  is not significant.

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Orthographic projection example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236
	then	e = 0.081819191	

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
False easting	FE	0 metres		
False northing	FN	0 metres		

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.939151101 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.037167659 rad

*To facilitate improvement, this document is subject to revision. The current version is available at [www.epsg.org](http://www.epsg.org).*

Note that ellipsoidal heights at the topocentric center ( $h_0$ ) and at the point to be converted ( $h$ ) may be the same as in the Vertical Perspective examples in the previous section. Neither enter the computations that follow.

$$\begin{aligned} e^2 &= 0.006694380 \\ v_0 &= 6392\,510.73 \text{ m} \\ v &= 6392\,088.02 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } E &= -189\,011.711 \text{ m} \\ \text{Northing, } N &= -128\,640.567 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for these E, N coordinates into latitude ( $\phi$ ) and longitude ( $\lambda$ ) is iterative. The following values are constant every iteration.

$$\begin{aligned} e^2 &= 0.006694380 \\ v_0 &= 6392\,510.73 \text{ m} \\ \phi_0 &= 0.95993109 \text{ rad} \\ \lambda_0 &= 0.08726646 \text{ rad} \end{aligned}$$

The following values change during 4 iterations to convergence:

	1	2	3	4
Latitude	0.95993109	0.9397628327	0.9391516179	0.9391511016
Longitude	0.08726646	0.0357167858	0.0371688977	0.0371676590
v	6392510.727	6392100.544	6392088.028	6392088.017
$\rho$	6378368.440	6377140.690	6377103.229	6377103.198
E'	0	-194318.490	-189006.908	-189011.711
N'	0	-124515.840	-128637.469	-128640.567
J <sub>11</sub>	0	265312.746	257728.730	257734.999
J <sub>12</sub>	3666593.522	3766198.868	3769619.566	3769621.986
J <sub>21</sub>	6378368.440	6370240.831	6370437.125	6370436.766
J <sub>22</sub>	0	-159176.388	-154825.395	-154829.329
D	-2338688440386	-24033825331760	-24054027385585	-24054043431047
$\Delta N$	-128640.567	-4124.727	-3.098	0
$\Delta E$	-189011.711	5306.779	-4.803	0
Latitude	0.9397628327	0.9391516179	0.9391511016	0.9391511016
Longitude	0.0357167858	0.0371688977	0.0371676590	0.0371676590

which results in:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \phi &= 0.939151102 \text{ rad} = 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 0.037167659 \text{ rad} = 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

## **2 Formulas for Coordinate Operations other than Map Projections**

### **2.1 Introduction**

Several types of coordinate reference system are recognised. The previous section discussed conversions of coordinates between geographic 2-dimensional and projected coordinate reference systems. The projected system is derived from its base geographic system.

Geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude) are calculated on a model of the earth. They are only unique and unambiguous when the model and its relationship to the real earth is identified. This is accomplished through a geodetic datum. A change of geodetic datum changes the geographic coordinates of a point. A geodetic datum combined with description of coordinate system gives a coordinate reference system. Coordinates are only unambiguous when their coordinate reference system is identified and defined.

It is frequently required to change coordinates derived in one geographic coordinate reference system to values expressed in another. For example, land and marine seismic surveys are nowadays most conveniently positioned by GPS satellite in the WGS 84 geographic coordinate reference system, whereas coordinates may be required referenced to the national geodetic reference system in use for the country concerned. It may therefore be necessary to transform the observed WGS 84 data to the national geodetic reference system in order to avoid discrepancies caused by the change of geodetic datum.

Some transformation methods operate directly between geographic coordinates. Others are between geocentric coordinates (3-dimensional Cartesian coordinates where the coordinate system origin is fixed at the centre of the earth). The second part of this Guidance Note covers conversions and transformations between geographic coordinate reference systems, both directly and indirectly through geocentric systems. Some of these methods (polynomial family) may also be encountered for use between other types of coordinate reference systems, for example directly between projected coordinate reference systems. This second part also describes transformations of vertical coordinates.

Coordinate handling software may execute more complicated operations, concatenating a number of steps linking together geographic, projected and/or engineering coordinates referenced to different datums. Other than as mentioned above, these concatenated operations are beyond the scope of this document.

Note that it is very important to ensure that the signs of the parameter values used in the transformations are correct in respect of the transformation being executed. Preferably one should always express transformations in terms of "From"....."To"..... thus avoiding the confusion which may result from interpreting a dash as a minus sign or vice versa.

### **2.2 Coordinate Conversions other than Map Projections**

#### **2.2.1 Geographic/Geocentric conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9602)

Latitude,  $\phi$ , and Longitude,  $\lambda$ , and ellipsoidal height,  $h$ , in terms of a 3-dimensional geographic coordinate reference system may be expressed in terms of a geocentric (earth centred) Cartesian coordinate reference system X, Y, Z with the Z axis corresponding with the earth's rotation axis positive northwards, the X axis through the intersection of the prime meridian and equator, and the Y axis through the intersection of the equator with longitude 90°E. The geographic and geocentric systems are based on the same geodetic datum.

Geocentric coordinate reference systems are conventionally taken to be defined with the X axis through the intersection of the Greenwich meridian and equator. This requires that the equivalent geographic coordinate reference system be based on the Greenwich meridian. In application of the formulas below, geographic

coordinate reference systems based on a non-Greenwich prime meridian should first be transformed to their Greenwich equivalent. Geocentric coordinates X, Y and Z take their units from the units for the ellipsoid axes (a and b). As it is conventional for X, Y and Z to be in metres, if the ellipsoid axis dimensions are given in another linear unit they should first be converted to metres.

If the ellipsoidal semi major axis is **a**, semi minor axis **b**, and inverse flattening **1/f**, then

$$\begin{aligned} X &= (v + h) \cos \varphi \cos \lambda \\ Y &= (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin \lambda \\ Z &= [(1 - e^2) v + h] \sin \varphi \end{aligned}$$

where  $v$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude  $\varphi$  and is equal to

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5},$$

$\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are respectively the latitude and longitude (related to the prime meridian) of the point,

$h$  is height above the ellipsoid, (see note below), and

$$e \text{ is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where } e^2 = (a^2 - b^2)/a^2 = 2f - f^2$$

*(Note that  $h$  is the height above the ellipsoid. This is the height value that is delivered by GPS satellite observations but is not the gravity-related height value which is normally used for national mapping and levelling operations. The gravity-related height ( $H$ ) is usually the height above mean sea level or an alternative level reference for the country. If one starts with a gravity-related height  $H$ , it will be necessary to convert it to an ellipsoid height ( $h$ ) before using the above transformation formulas. See section 2.4.5 below. For the WGS 84 ellipsoid the difference between ellipsoid and mean sea level can vary between values of -100m in the Sri Lanka area to +80m in the North Atlantic.)*

For the reverse conversion, Cartesian coordinates in the geocentric coordinate reference system may be converted to geographic coordinates in terms of the geographic 3D coordinate reference system by:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \text{atan} [(Z + e^2 v \sin \varphi) / (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5}] \text{ by iteration} \\ \lambda &= \text{atan } Y/X \\ h &= X \sec \lambda \sec \varphi - v \end{aligned}$$

where  $\lambda$  is relative to the Greenwich prime meridian.

To avoid iteration for  $\varphi$  it may alternatively be found from:

$$\varphi = \text{atan}[(Z + \varepsilon b \sin^3 \varphi) / (p - e^2 a \cos^3 \varphi)]$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon &= e^2 / (1 - e^2) \\ b &= a(1 - f) \\ p &= (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5} \\ q &= \text{atan}[(Z a) / (p b)] \end{aligned}$$

Then  $h$  may more conveniently be found from

$$h = (p / \cos \varphi) - v$$

**Example:**

Consider a North Sea point with position derived by GPS satellite in the WGS 84 coordinate reference system. The WGS 84 ellipsoid parameters are:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= 6378\,137.000\text{m} \\ 1/f &= 298.2572236 \end{aligned}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} e^2 &= 0.006694380 \\ \varepsilon &= 0.006739497 \\ b &= 6356\,752.314 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Using the reverse direction direct formulas above, the conversion of WGS 84 geocentric coordinates of

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 3771\,793.968 \text{ m} \\ Y &= 140\,253.342 \text{ m} \\ Z &= 5124\,304.349 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

is:

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 3774400.712 \\ q &= 0.937546077 \\ \varphi &= 0.939151101 \text{ rad} \\ v &= 6392088.017 \end{aligned}$$

Then WGS 84 geographic 3D coordinates are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi &= 53^{\circ}48'33.820'' \\ &\text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda &= 2^{\circ}07'46.380''\text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h &= 73.0\text{m} \end{aligned}$$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5201 of the Test Dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### **2.2.2 Geocentric/topocentric conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9836)

A topocentric coordinate system is a 3-D Cartesian system having mutually perpendicular axes U, V, W with an origin on or near the surface of the Earth. The U-axis is locally east, the V-axis is locally north and the W-axis is up forming a right-handed coordinate system. It is applied in two particular settings:

(i) the height axis W is chosen to be along the direction of gravity at the topocentric origin. The other two axes are then in the horizontal plane. A special case of this, often applied in engineering applications, is when the topocentric origin is on the vertical datum surface; then topocentric height W approximates to gravity-related height H.

(ii) the topocentric height axis W is chosen to be the direction through the topocentric origin and perpendicular to the surface of the ellipsoid. The other two topocentric axes (U and V) are in the "topocentric plane", a plane parallel to the tangent to the ellipsoid surface at the topocentric origin and passing through the topocentric origin (see figures 12 and 13 below). The coordinates defining the topocentric origin will usually be expressed in ellipsoidal terms as latitude  $\varphi_0$ , longitude  $\lambda_0$  and ellipsoidal height  $h_0$  but may alternatively be expressed as geocentric Cartesian coordinates  $X_0, Y_0, Z_0$ . In this context the geocentric coordinates of the topocentric origin should not be confused with those of the geocentric origin where  $X=Y=Z=0$ .

A special case of this is when the topocentric origin is chosen to be exactly on the ellipsoid surface and  $h_0 = 0$ . Then the topocentric U and V axes are in the ellipsoid tangent plane and at (and only at) the topocentric origin topocentric height  $W = \text{ellipsoidal height } h$ .

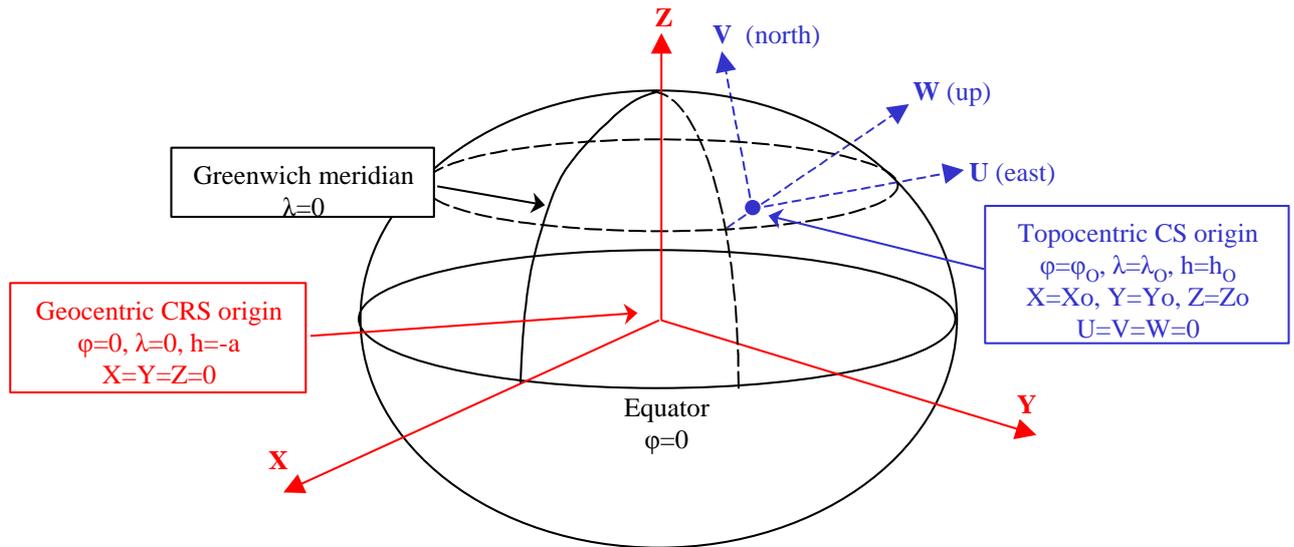


Figure 12 – Topocentric and geocentric systems

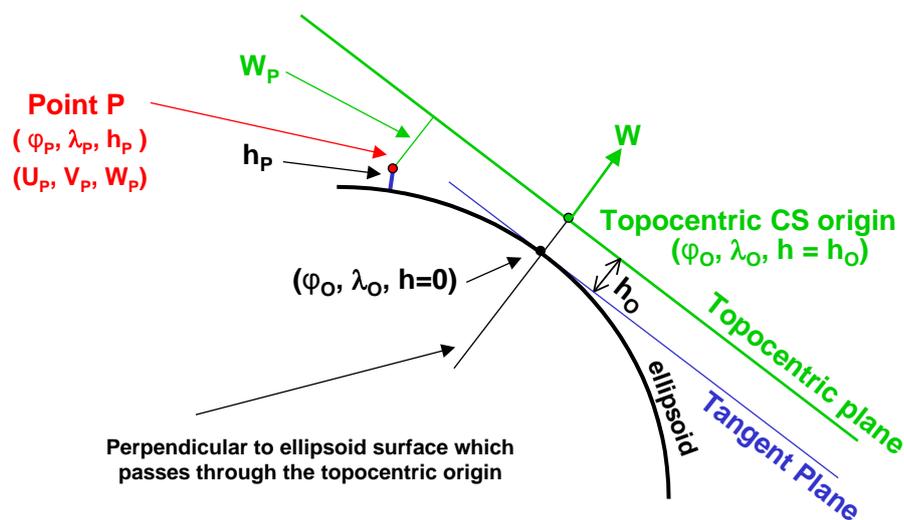


Figure 13 – Topocentric and ellipsoidal heights

In this and the following section we are concerned with the second of the two settings for topocentric coordinate systems where the system is associated with the ellipsoid and a particular geodetic datum. The application of such topocentric coordinates includes scalable mapping and visualisation systems as described in section 1.3.17. The following section covers the conversion between ellipsoidal coordinates and topocentric coordinates. The remainder of this section describes how geocentric coordinates X, Y, Z may be converted into topocentric coordinates U, V, W given the geocentric coordinates of the topocentric CS origin ( $X_0, Y_0, Z_0$ ).

First it is necessary to derive ellipsoidal values  $\phi_0, \lambda_0$  of the topocentric origin from their geocentric values  $X_0, Y_0, Z_0$  through the reverse formulas given in Section 2.2.1 above. (The value  $h_0$  for the ellipsoidal height of the topocentric origin is not required in what follows.)

Then topocentric coordinates [U, V, W] are computed as follows:

$$\begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{R} * \begin{pmatrix} (X) \\ (Y) \\ (Z) \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} (X_0) \\ (Y_0) \\ (Z_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

where,

$$\mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \lambda_0 & \cos \lambda_0 & 0 \\ -\sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \\ \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \sin \varphi_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Or, expressed as scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -(X-X_0) \sin \lambda_0 + (Y-Y_0) \cos \lambda_0 \\ V &= -(X-X_0) \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 - (Y-Y_0) \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + (Z-Z_0) \cos \varphi_0 \\ W &= (X-X_0) \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + (Y-Y_0) \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + (Z-Z_0) \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas to calculate geocentric coordinates from topocentric coordinates are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{R}^{-1} * \begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ Y_0 \\ Z_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where,

$$\mathbf{R}^{-1} = \mathbf{R}^T = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ \cos \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ 0 & \cos \varphi_0 & \sin \varphi_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and, as for the forward case,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\lambda_0$  are calculated through the formulas in Section 2.2.1.

Or, expressed as scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X_0 - U \sin \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y &= Y_0 + U \cos \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z &= Z_0 + V \cos \varphi_0 + W \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**

For Geocentric CRS = WGS 84 (EPSG CRS code 4978)  
 and  
 Topocentric origin  $X_o$  = 3652 755.3058 m  
 Topocentric origin  $Y_o$  = 319 574.6799 m  
 Topocentric origin  $Z_o$  = 5201 547.3536 m

Ellipsoid parameters:  $a = 6378137.0$  metres  $1/f = 298.2572236$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameters:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad \epsilon = 0.006739497 \quad b = 6356752.314$$

Next, derive  $\phi_o, \lambda_o$  from  $X_o, Y_o, Z_o$  by the formulas given in Section 2.2.1:

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 3666708.2376 \\ q &= 0.9583523313 \\ \phi_o &= 0.9599310885 \quad \text{rad} \\ \lambda_o &= 0.0872664625 \quad \text{rad} \end{aligned}$$

Forward calculation for point with geocentric coordinates:

$$X = 3771\ 793.968 \text{ m} \quad Y = 140\ 253.342 \text{ m} \quad Z = 5124\ 304.349 \text{ m}$$

gives topocentric coordinates

$$U = -189\ 013.869 \text{ m} \quad V = -128\ 642.040 \text{ m} \quad W = -4\ 220.171 \text{ m}$$

The reverse calculation contains no intermediate terms other than those solved for above and is a trivial reversal of the forward.

**2.2.3 Geographic/topocentric conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9837)

Topocentric coordinates may be derived from geographic coordinates indirectly by concatenating the geographic/geocentric conversion described in 2.2.1 above with the geocentric/topocentric conversion described in 2.2.2 above. Alternatively the conversion may be made directly:

To convert latitude  $\phi$ , longitude  $\lambda$  and ellipsoidal height  $h$  into topocentric coordinates  $U, V, W$ :

$$\begin{aligned} U &= (v + h) \cos \phi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_o) \\ V &= (v + h) [\sin \phi \cos \phi_o - \cos \phi \sin \phi_o \cos (\lambda - \lambda_o)] + e^2 (v_o \sin \phi_o - v \sin \phi) \cos \phi_o \\ W &= (v + h) [\sin \phi \sin \phi_o + \cos \phi \cos \phi_o \cos (\lambda - \lambda_o)] + e^2 (v_o \sin \phi_o - v \sin \phi) \sin \phi_o - (v_o + h_o) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\phi_o, \lambda_o, h_o$  are the ellipsoidal coordinates of the topocentric origin

and  $v$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\phi = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi)^{0.5}$   
 $v_o$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\phi_o = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi_o)^{0.5}$   
 $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$

The reverse formulae to convert topocentric coordinates ( $U, V, W$ ) into latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height ( $\phi, \lambda, h$ ) first draws on the reverse case of section 2.2.2 to derive geocentric coordinates  $X, Y, Z$  and then on the reverse case in section 2.2.1 to derive latitude, longitude and height.

First,

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X_0 - U \sin \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y &= Y_0 + U \cos \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z &= Z_0 + V \cos \varphi_0 + W \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

where,

$$\begin{aligned} X_0 &= (v_0 + h_0) \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y_0 &= (v_0 + h_0) \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z_0 &= [(1 - e^2) v_0 + h_0] \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

$\varphi_0, \lambda_0, h_0$  are the ellipsoidal coordinates of the topocentric origin,  
 $v_0$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\varphi_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}$ , and  
 $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$ .

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \text{atan}[(Z + \varepsilon b \sin^3 q) / (p - e^2 a \cos^3 q)] \\ \lambda &= \text{atan } Y/X \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon &= e^2 / (1 - e^2) \\ b &= a(1 - f) \\ p &= (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5} \\ q &= \text{atan}[(Z a) / (p b)] \end{aligned}$$

$\lambda$  is relative to the Greenwich prime meridian.

and

$$h = (p / \cos \varphi) - v$$

where

$$v \text{ is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude } \varphi = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

**Example:**

For Geographic 3D CRS = WGS 84 (EPSG CRS code 4979)  
 and

Topocentric origin latitude	$\varphi_0$	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
Topocentric origin longitude	$\lambda_0$	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
Topocentric origin ellipsoidal height	$h_0$	200 metres		

Ellipsoid parameters:  $a = 6378137.0$  metres  $1/f = 298.2572236$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameter  $e^2$  and radius of curvature  $v_0$  at the topocentric origin:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad v_0 = 6392510.727$$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.93915110 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.03716765 rad
Height	$h$	=	73.0 metres		

$$v = 6392088.017$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -189\,013.869 \text{ m} \\ V &= -128\,642.040 \text{ m} \\ W &= -4\,220.171 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -189\,013.869 \text{ m} \\ V &= -128\,642.040 \text{ m} \\ W &= -4\,220.171 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameter  $e^2$  and radius of curvature  $v_0$  at the topocentric origin:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad v_0 = 6392510.727$$

then the following intermediate terms:

$$\begin{array}{ll} X_0 = 3652\,755.306 & \varepsilon = 0.0067394967 \\ Y_0 = 319\,574.680 & b = 6356\,752.314 \\ Z_0 = 5201\,547.353 & p = 3774\,400.712 \\ X = 3771\,793.968 & q = 0.937549875 \\ Y = 140\,253.342 & \varphi = 0.9391511015 \text{ rad} \\ Z = 5124\,304.349 & v = 6392\,088.017 \\ & \lambda = 0.03716765908 \text{ rad} \end{array}$$

for a final result of:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Latitude } \varphi & = & 53^\circ 48' 33.820'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda & = & 2^\circ 07' 46.380'' \text{E} \\ \text{Height } h & = & 73.0 \text{ metres} \end{array}$$

#### **2.2.4 Geographic 3D to 2D conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9659)

The forward case is trivial. A 3-dimensional geographic coordinate reference system comprising of geodetic latitude, geodetic longitude and ellipsoidal height is converted to its 2-dimensional subset by the simple expedient of dropping the height.

The reverse conversion, from 2D to 3D, is indeterminate. It is however a requirement when a geographic 2D coordinate reference system is to be transformed using a geocentric method which is 3-dimensional (see section 2.4.4.1 below). In practice an artificial ellipsoidal height is created and appended to the geographic 2D coordinate reference system to create a geographic 3D coordinate reference system referenced to the same geodetic datum. The assumed ellipsoidal height is usually either set to the gravity-related height of a position in a compound coordinate reference system, or set to zero. As long as the height chosen is within a few kilometres of sea level, no error will be induced into the horizontal position resulting from the later geocentric transformation; the vertical coordinate will however be meaningless.

#### **Example:**

A location in the ETRS89 Geographic 3D coordinate reference system

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s & = 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s & = 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s & = 73.0 \text{m} \end{array}$$

is converted to the ETRS89 Geographic 2D coordinate reference system as

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s & = 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s & = 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \end{array}$$

For the reverse conversion of the same point in the ETRS89 Geographic 2D coordinate reference system with horizontal coordinates of

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s & = 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s & = 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \end{array}$$

an arbitrary value is given to the ellipsoidal height resulting in coordinates in the ETRS89 Geographic 3D coordinate reference system of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s &= 0.0\text{m} \end{aligned}$$

## **2.3 Coordinate Operation Methods that can be conversions or transformations**

In theory, certain coordinate operation methods do not readily fit the ISO 19111 classification of being either a coordinate conversion (no change of datum involved) or a coordinate transformation. These methods change coordinates directly from one coordinate reference system to another and may be applied with or without change of datum, depending upon whether the source and target coordinate reference systems are based on the same or different datums. In practice, most usage of these methods does in fact include a change of datum. OGP follows the general mathematical usage of these methods and classifies them as transformations.

### **2.3.1 Polynomial transformations**

*Note: In the sections that follow, the general mathematical symbols  $X$  and  $Y$  representing the axes of a coordinate reference system must not be confused with the specific axis abbreviations or axis order in particular coordinate reference systems.*

#### **2.3.1.1 General case**

Polynomial transformations between two coordinate reference systems are typically applied in cases where one or both of the coordinate reference systems exhibits lack of homogeneity in orientation and scale. The small distortions are then approximated by polynomial functions in latitude and longitude or in easting and northing. Depending on the degree of variability in the distortions, approximation may be carried out using polynomials of degree 2, 3, or higher. In the case of transformations between two projected coordinate reference systems, the additional distortions resulting from the application of two map projections and a datum transformation can be included in a single polynomial approximation function.

Polynomial approximation functions themselves are subject to variations, as different approximation characteristics may be achieved by different polynomial functions. The simplest of all polynomials is the general polynomial function. In order to avoid problems of numerical instability this type of polynomial should be used after reducing the coordinate values in both the source and the target coordinate reference system to ‘manageable’ numbers, between  $-10$  and  $+10$  at most. This is achieved by working with offsets relative to a central evaluation point, scaled to the desired number range by applying a scaling factor to the coordinate offsets.

Hence an evaluation point is chosen in the source coordinate reference system ( $X_{S0}, Y_{S0}$ ) and in the target coordinate reference system ( $X_{T0}, Y_{T0}$ ). Often these two sets of coordinates do not refer to the same physical point but two points are chosen that have the same coordinate values in both the source and the target coordinate reference system. (When the two points have identical coordinates, these parameters are conveniently eliminated from the formulas, but the general case where the coordinates differ is given here).

The selection of an evaluation point in each of the two coordinate reference systems allows the point coordinates in both to be reduced as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} X_S - X_{S0} \\ Y_S - Y_{S0} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$X_T - X_{T0}$$

$$Y_T - Y_{T0}$$

These coordinate differences are expressed in their own unit of measure, which may not be the same as that of the corresponding coordinate reference system.<sup>4)</sup>

A further reduction step is usually necessary to bring these coordinate differences into the desired numerical range by applying a scaling factor to the coordinate differences in order to reduce them to a value range that may be applied to the polynomial formulae below without introducing numerical precision errors:

$$U = m_S (X_S - X_{S0})$$

$$V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{S0})$$

where

$X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate reference system,

$X_{S0}, Y_{S0}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,

$m_S$  is the scaling factor applied the coordinate differences in the source coordinate reference system.

The normalised coordinates  $U$  and  $V$  of the point whose coordinates are to be transformed are used as input to the polynomial transformation formula. In order to control the numerical range of the polynomial coefficients  $A_n$  and  $B_n$  the output coordinate differences  $dX$  and  $dY$  are multiplied by a scaling factor,  $m_T$ .

$$m_T.dX = A_0 + A_1U + A_2V + A_3U^2 + A_4UV + A_5V^2 \quad \text{(to degree 2)}$$

$$+ A_6U^3 + A_7U^2V + A_8UV^2 + A_9V^3 \quad \text{(degree 3 terms)}$$

$$+ A_{10}U^4 + A_{11}U^3V + A_{12}U^2V^2 + A_{13}UV^3 + A_{14}V^4 \quad \text{(degree 4 terms)}$$

$$+ A_{15}U^5 + A_{16}U^4V + A_{17}U^3V^2 + A_{18}U^2V^3 + A_{19}UV^4 + A_{20}V^5 \quad \text{(degree 5 terms)}$$

$$+ A_{21}U^6 + A_{22}U^5V + A_{23}U^4V^2 + A_{24}U^3V^3 + A_{25}U^2V^4 + A_{26}UV^5 + A_{27}V^6 \quad \text{(degree 6 terms)}$$

$$+ \dots + A_{104}V^{13} \quad \text{(degree 13 terms)}$$

$$m_T.dY = B_0 + B_1U + B_2V + B_3U^2 + B_4UV + B_5V^2 \quad \text{(to degree 2)}$$

$$+ B_6U^3 + B_7U^2V + B_8UV^2 + B_9V^3 \quad \text{(degree 3 terms)}$$

$$+ B_{10}U^4 + B_{11}U^3V + B_{12}U^2V^2 + B_{13}UV^3 + B_{14}V^4 \quad \text{(degree 4 terms)}$$

$$+ B_{15}U^5 + B_{16}U^4V + B_{17}U^3V^2 + B_{18}U^2V^3 + B_{19}UV^4 + B_{20}V^5 \quad \text{(degree 5 terms)}$$

$$+ B_{21}U^6 + B_{22}U^5V + B_{23}U^4V^2 + B_{24}U^3V^3 + B_{25}U^2V^4 + B_{26}UV^5 + B_{27}V^6 \quad \text{(degree 6 terms)}$$

$$+ \dots + B_{104}V^{13} \quad \text{(degree 13 terms)}$$

from which  $dX$  and  $dY$  are evaluated. These will be in the units of the target coordinate reference system.

In the EPSG dataset, the polynomial coefficients are given as parameters of the form  $Aumvn$  and  $Bumvn$ , where  $m$  is the power to which  $U$  is raised and  $n$  is the power to which  $V$  is raised. For example,  $A_{17}$  is represented as coordinate operation parameter  $Au3v2$ .

The relationship between the two coordinate reference systems can now be written as follows:

$$(X_T - X_{T0}) = (X_S - X_{S0}) + dX$$

$$(Y_T - Y_{T0}) = (Y_S - Y_{S0}) + dY$$

or

$$X_T = X_S - X_{S0} + X_{T0} + dX$$

$$Y_T = Y_S - Y_{S0} + Y_{T0} + dY$$

where:

$X_T, Y_T$  are coordinates in the target coordinate reference system,

134134\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>4)</sup> If the source and/or the target coordinate reference system are geographic, the coordinates themselves may be expressed in sexagesimal degrees (degrees, minutes, seconds), which cannot be directly processed by a mathematical formula.

$X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate reference system,  
 $X_{SO}, Y_{SO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,  
 $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the target coordinate reference system,  
 $dX, dY$  are derived through the scaled polynomial formulas.

Other (arguably better) approximating polynomials are described in mathematical textbooks such as “*Theory and applications of numerical analysis*”, by G.M. Phillips and P.J. Taylor (Academic Press, 1973).

**Example: General polynomial of degree 6** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9648)  
 For coordinate transformation TM75 to ETRS89 (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point  $X_O$  in source CRS:  $X_{SO} = \varphi_{SO} = 53^\circ 30' 00.000'' N = +53.5$  degrees  
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point  $Y_O$  in source CRS:  $Y_{SO} = \lambda_{SO} = 7^\circ 42' 00.000'' W = -7.7$  degrees  
 Ordinate 1 of evaluation point  $X_O$  in target CRS :  $X_{TO} = \varphi_{TO} = 53^\circ 30' 00.000'' N = +53.5$  degrees  
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point  $Y_O$  in target CRS :  $Y_{SO} = \lambda_{TO} = 7^\circ 42' 00.000'' W = -7.7$  degrees  
 Scaling factor for source CRS coordinate differences:  $m_S = 0.1$   
 Scaling factor for target CRS coordinate differences:  $m_T = 3600$

Coefficients (see EPSG dataset transformation code 1041 for complete set of values):  
 $A_0 = 0.763$                        $A_1 = -4.487$     ...                       $A_{24} = -265.898$     ...                       $A_{27} = 0$   
 $B_0 = -2.810$                        $B_1 = -0.341$     ...                       $B_{24} = -853.950$     ...                       $B_{27} = 0$

Forward calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_{TM75} = X_S &= 55^\circ 00' 00'' N &= +55.000 \text{ degrees} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_{TM75} = Y_S &= 6^\circ 30' 00'' W &= -6.500 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} X_S - X_{SO} = \varphi_{TM75} - \varphi_{SO} &= 55.0 - 53.5 = 1.5 \text{ degrees} \\ Y_S - Y_{SO} = \lambda_{TM75} - \lambda_{SO} &= -6.5 - (-7.7) = 1.2 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} U = m_S (X_S - X_{SO}) &= m_S (\varphi_{TM75} - \varphi_{SO}) = 0.1 * (1.5) = 0.15 \\ V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{SO}) &= m_S (\lambda_{TM75} - \lambda_{SO}) = 0.1 * (1.2) = 0.12 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= (A_0 + A_1 U + \dots + A_5 V^2 + \dots + A_{24} U^3 V^3) / m_T \\ &= [0.763 + (-4.487 * 0.15) + \dots + (0.183 * 0.12^2) + \dots + (-265.898 * 0.15^3 * 0.12^3)] / 3600 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dY &= (B_0 + B_1 U + \dots + B_{24} U^3 V^3) / m_T \\ &= [-2.810 + (-0.341 * 0.15) + \dots + (-853.95 * 0.15^3 * 0.12^3)] / 3600 \end{aligned}$$

	to degree 2	degree 3	degree 4	degree 5	degree 6	Sum / $m_T$
$dX =$	0.1029127	-0.002185407	0.0064009440	0.0014247770	-0.0015507171	0.0000297229
$dY =$	-3.3955340	0.022364019	-0.0230149836	-0.0156886729	-0.0049802364	-0.0009491261

Then Latitude  $\varphi_{ETRS89} = X_T = X_S + dX = 55.0 + 0.00002972$  degrees =  $55^\circ 00' 00.107'' N$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{ETRS89} = Y_T = Y_S + dY = -6.5 - 0.00094913$  degrees =  $6^\circ 30' 03.417'' W$

**Polynomial reversibility**

Approximation polynomials are in a strict mathematical sense *not reversible*, i.e. the same polynomial coefficients cannot be used to execute the reverse transformation.

In principle two options are available to execute the reverse transformation:

1. By applying a similar polynomial transformation with a different set of polynomial coefficients for

the reverse polynomial transformation. This would result in a separate forward and reverse transformation being stored in the EPSG dataset (or any other geodetic data repository).

2. By applying the polynomial transformation with the same coefficients but with their signs reversed and then iterate to an acceptable solution, the number of iteration steps being dependent on the desired accuracy. (Note that only the signs of the polynomial coefficients should be reversed and not the coordinates of the evaluation points or the scaling factors!) The iteration procedure is usually described by the information source of the polynomial transformation.

However, under certain conditions, described below, a satisfactory solution for the reverse transformation may be obtained using the forward coefficient values in a single step, rather than multiple step iteration. If such a solution is possible, in the EPSG dataset the polynomial coordinate transformation method is classified as a ***reversible polynomial of degree n***.

A (general) polynomial transformation is reversible only when the following conditions are met.

1. The co-ordinates of source and target evaluation point are (numerically) the same.
2. The unit of measure of the coordinate differences in source and target coordinate reference system are the same.
3. The scaling factors applied to source and target coordinate differences are the same.
4. The spatial variation of the differences between the coordinate reference systems around any given location is sufficiently small.

Clarification on conditions for polynomial reversibility:

Re 1 and 2 - In the reverse transformation the roles of the source and target coordinate reference systems are reversed. Consequently, the co-ordinates of the evaluation point in the *source* coordinate reference system become those in the *target* coordinate reference system in the reverse transformation. Usage of the same transformation parameters for the reverse transformation will therefore only be valid if the evaluation point coordinates are numerically the same in source and target coordinate reference system and in the same units. That is,  $X_{S0} = X_{T0} = X_0$  and  $Y_{S0} = Y_{T0} = Y_0$ .

Re 3 - The same holds for the scaling factors of the source and target coordinate differences and for the units of measure of the coordinate differences. That is,  $m_S = m_T = m$ .

Re 4 - If conditions 1, 2 and 3 are all satisfied it then may be possible to use the forward polynomial algorithm with the forward parameters for the reverse transformation. This is the case if the spatial variations in dX and dY around any given location are sufficiently constant. The signs of the polynomial coefficients are then reversed but the scaling factor and the evaluation point coordinates retain their signs. If these spatial variations in dX and dY are too large, for the reverse transformation iteration would be necessary. It is therefore not the algorithm that determines whether a single step solution is sufficient or whether iteration is required, but the desired accuracy combined with the degree of spatial variability of dX and dY.

An example of a reversible polynomial transformation is ED50 to ED87 (1) for the North Sea. The suitability of this transformation to be described by a reversible polynomial can easily be explained. In the first place both source and target coordinate reference systems are of type geographic 2D. The typical difference in coordinate values between ED50 and ED87 is in the order of 2 metres ( $\approx 10^{-6}$  degrees) in the area of application. The polynomial functions are evaluated about central points with coordinates of 55°N, 0° E in both coordinate reference systems. The reduced coordinate differences (*in degrees*) are used as input parameters to the polynomial functions. The output coordinate differences are corrections to the input coordinate offsets of about  $10^{-6}$  degrees. This difference of several orders of magnitude between input and output values is the property that makes a polynomial function reversible in practice (although not in a formal mathematical sense).

The error made by the polynomial approximation formulas in calculating the reverse correction is of the same order of magnitude as the ratio of output versus input:

$$\text{output error} \quad \text{output value}$$

$$\frac{\text{input error}}{\text{input value}} \approx \frac{\text{input error}}{\text{input value}} (\approx 10^{-6})$$

As long as the input values (the coordinate offsets from the evaluation point) are orders of magnitude larger than the output (the corrections), and provided the coefficients are used with changed signs, the polynomial transformation may be considered to be reversible.

Hence the EPSG dataset acknowledges two classes of general polynomial functions, reversible and non-reversible, as distinguished by whether or not the coefficients may be used in both forward and reverse transformations, i.e. are reversible. The EPSG dataset does not describe the iterative solution as a separate algorithm. The iterative solution for the reverse transformation, when applicable, is deemed to be implied by the (forward) algorithm.

**Example: Reversible polynomial of degree 4** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9651)  
 For coordinate transformation ED50 to ED87 (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:  $X_O = \varphi_O = 55^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} = +55 \text{ degrees}$   
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:  $Y_O = \lambda_O = 0^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} = +0 \text{ degrees}$

Scaling factor for coordinate differences:  $m = 1.0$

Parameters:

$A_0 = -5.56098\text{E-}06$                        $A_1 = -1.55391\text{E-}06$     ...     $A_{14} = -4.01383\text{E-}09$   
 $B_0 = +1.48944\text{E-}05$                        $B_2 = +2.68191\text{E-}05$     ...     $B_{14} = +7.62236\text{E-}09$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi_{\text{ED50}} = X_S = 52^{\circ}30'30''\text{N} = +52.508333333 \text{ degrees}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{\text{ED50}} = Y_S = 2^{\circ}\text{E} = +2.0 \text{ degrees}$

$U = m * (X_S - X_O) = m * (\varphi_{\text{ED50}} - \varphi_O) = 1.0 * (52.508333333 - 55.0) = -2.491666667 \text{ degrees}$   
 $V = m * (Y_S - Y_O) = m * (\lambda_{\text{ED50}} - \lambda_O) = 1.0 * (2.0 - 0.0) = 2.0 \text{ degrees}$

$dX = (A_0 + A_1U + \dots + A_{14}V^{14}) / k_{\text{CD}}$   
 $= [-5.56098\text{E-}06 + (-1.55391\text{E-}06 * -2.491666667) + \dots + (-4.01383\text{E-}09 * 2.0^{14})] / 1.0$   
 $= -3.12958\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees}$

$dY = (B_0 + B_1U + \dots + B_{14}V^{14}) / k_{\text{CD}}$   
 $= [+1.48944\text{E-}05 + (2.68191\text{E-}05 * -2.491666667) + \dots + (7.62236\text{E-}09 * 2.0^{14})] / 1.0$   
 $= +9.80126\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees}$

Then: Latitude  $\varphi_{\text{ED87}} = X_T = X_S + dX = 52.508333333 - 3.12958\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees} = 52^{\circ}30'29.9887''\text{N}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{\text{ED87}} = Y_T = Y_S + dY = 2^{\circ}00'00.0353''\text{E}$

Reverse calculation for coordinate transformation ED50 to ED87 (1).

The polynomial to degree 4 transformation for the ED50 to ED87 (1) coordinate transformation is reversible. The same formulas may be applied for the reverse calculation, but coefficients  $A_0$  through  $A_{14}$  and  $B_0$  through  $B_{14}$  are applied with reversal of their signs. Sign reversal is not applied to the coordinates of the evaluation point or scaling factor for coordinate differences. Thus:

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:  $X_O = \varphi_O = 55^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} = +55 \text{ degrees}$   
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:  $Y_O = \lambda_O = 0^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} = +0 \text{ degrees}$   
 Scaling factor for coordinate differences:  $m = 1.0$

$A_0 = +5.56098\text{E-}06$                        $A_1 = +1.55391\text{E-}06$     ...     $A_{14} = +4.01383\text{E-}09$

$$B_0 = -1.48944E-05 \quad B_1 = -2.68191E-05 \quad \dots \quad B_{14} = -7.62236E-09$$

Reverse calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_{ED87} &= X_S = 52^\circ 30' 29.9887'' \text{N} = +52.5083301944 \text{ degrees} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_{ED87} &= Y_S = 2^\circ 00' 00.0353'' \text{E} = +2.0000098055 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$U = 1.0 * (52.5083301944 - 55.0) = -2.4916698056 \text{ degrees}$$

$$V = 1.0 * (2.0000098055 - 0.0) = 2.0000098055 \text{ degrees}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= (A_0 + A_1U + \dots + A_{14}V^4)/k \\ &= [+5.56098E-06 + (1.55391E-06 * -2.491666667) + \dots \\ &\quad \dots + (4.01383E-09 * 2.0000098055^4)]/1.0 \\ &= +3.12957E-06 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dY &= (B_0 + B_1.U + \dots + B_{14}.V^4)/k \\ &= [-1.48944E-05 + (-2.68191E-05 * -2.491666667) + \dots \\ &\quad \dots + (-7.62236E-09 * 2.0000098055^4)]/1.0 \\ &= -9.80124E-06 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then: Latitude } \varphi_{ED50} = X_T = X_S + dX &= 52.5083301944 + 3.12957E-06 \text{ degrees} = 52^\circ 30' 30.000'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_{ED50} = Y_T = Y_S + dY &= 2^\circ 00' 00.000'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

### 2.3.1.2 Polynomial transformation with complex numbers

The relationship between two projected coordinate reference systems may be approximated more elegantly by a single polynomial regression formula written in terms of complex numbers. The advantage is that the dependence between the ‘A’ and ‘B’ coefficients (for U and V) is taken into account in the formula, resulting in fewer coefficients for the same order polynomial. A polynomial to degree 3 in complex numbers is used in Belgium. A polynomial to degree 4 in complex numbers is used in The Netherlands for transforming coordinates referenced to the Amersfoort / RD system to and from ED50 / UTM.

$$\begin{aligned} m_T (dX + i dY) &= (A_1 + i A_2) (U + i V) + (A_3 + i A_4) (U + i V)^2 \quad (\text{to degree 2}) \\ &\quad + (A_5 + i A_6) (U + i V)^3 \quad (\text{additional degree 3 terms}) \\ &\quad + (A_7 + i A_8) (U + i V)^4 \quad (\text{additional degree 4 terms}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{where } U = m_S (X_S - X_{S0})$$

$$V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{S0})$$

and  $m_S$ ,  $m_T$  are the scaling factors for the coordinate differences in the source and target coordinate reference systems.

The polynomial to degree 4 can alternatively be expressed in matrix form as

$$\begin{pmatrix} m_T \cdot dX \\ m_T \cdot dY \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} +A_1 & -A_2 & +A_3 & -A_4 & +A_5 & -A_6 & +A_7 & -A_8 \\ +A_2 & +A_1 & +A_4 & +A_3 & +A_6 & +A_5 & +A_8 & +A_7 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ U^2 - V^2 \\ 2UV \\ U^3 - 3UV^2 \\ 3U^2V - V^3 \\ U^4 - 6U^2V^2 + V^4 \\ 4U^3V - 4UV^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then as for the general polynomial case above

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= X_S - X_{SO} + X_{TO} + dX \\ Y_T &= Y_S - Y_{SO} + Y_{TO} + dY \end{aligned}$$

where, as above,

- $X_T, Y_T$  are coordinates in the target coordinate system,
- $X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate system,
- $X_{SO}, Y_{SO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,
- $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the target coordinate reference system.

Note that the zero order coefficients of the general polynomial,  $A_0$  and  $B_0$ , have apparently disappeared. In reality they are absorbed by the different coordinates of the source and of the target evaluation point, which in this case, are numerically very different because of the use of two different projected coordinate systems for source and target.

The transformation parameter values (the coefficients) are not reversible. For the reverse transformation a different set of parameter values are required, used within the same formulas as the forward direction.

**Example:** Complex polynomial of degree 4 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9653)  
Coordinate transformation: Amersfoort / RD New to ED50 / UTM zone 31N (1):

<u>Coordinate transformation parameter name</u>	<u>Formula symbol</u>	<u>Parameter value</u>	<u>Unit</u>
ordinate 1 of the evaluation point in the source CS	$X_{SO}$	155,000.000	metre
ordinate 2 of the evaluation point in the source CS	$Y_{SO}$	463,000.000	metre
ordinate 1 of the evaluation point in the target CS	$X_{TO}$	663,395.607	metre
ordinate 2 of the evaluation point in the target CS	$Y_{TO}$	5,781,194.380	metre
scaling factor for source CRS coordinate differences	$m_S$	$10^{-5}$	
scaling factor for target CRS coordinate differences	$m_T$	1.0	
A1	$A_1$	-51.681	coefficient
A2	$A_2$	+3,290.525	coefficient
A3	$A_3$	+20.172	coefficient
A4	$A_4$	+1.133	coefficient
A5	$A_5$	+2.075	coefficient
A6	$A_6$	+0.251	coefficient
A7	$A_7$	+0.075	coefficient
A8	$A_8$	-0.012	coefficient

For input point:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } X_{\text{AMERSFOORT/RD}} &= X_S = 200,000.00 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Northing, } Y_{\text{AMERSFOORT/RD}} &= Y_S = 500,000.00 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} U &= m_S (X_S - X_{SO}) = (200,000 - 155,000) 10^{-5} = 0.45 \\ V &= m_S (Y_S - Y_{SO}) = (500,000 - 463,000) 10^{-5} = 0.37 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= (-1,240.050) / 1.0 \\ dY &= (1,468.748) / 1.0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then: Easting, } E_{\text{ED50/UTM31}} &= X_T = X_S - X_{SO} + X_{TO} + dX \\ &= 200,000 - 155,000 + 663,395.607 + (-1,240.050) \\ &= 707,155.557 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Northing, } N_{\text{ED50/UTM31N}} &= Y_T = Y_S - Y_{S0} + Y_{T0} + dY \\ &= 500,000 - 463,000 + 5,781,194.380 + 1,468.748 \\ &= 5,819,663.128 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

**2.3.1.3 Polynomial transformation for Spain**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9617)

The original geographic coordinate reference system for the Spanish mainland was based on Madrid 1870 datum, Struve 1860 ellipsoid, with longitudes related to the Madrid meridian. Three second-order polynomial expressions have been empirically derived by El Servicio Geográfico del Ejército to transform geographic coordinates based on this system to equivalent values based on the European Datum of 1950 (ED50). The polynomial coefficients derived can be used to transform coordinates from the Madrid 1870 (Madrid) geographic coordinate reference system to the ED50 system. Three pairs of expressions have been derived: each pair is used to calculate the shift in latitude and longitude respectively for (i) a mean for all Spain, (ii) a better fit for the north of Spain, (iii) a better fit for the south of Spain.

The polynomial expressions are:

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi \text{ (arc sec)} &= A_0 + (A_1 * \varphi_s) + (A_2 * \lambda_s) + (A_3 * H_s) \\ d\lambda \text{ (arc sec)} &= B_0 + B_0 + (B_1 * \varphi_s) + (B_2 * \lambda_s) + (B_3 * H_s) \end{aligned}$$

where latitude  $\varphi_s$  and longitude  $\lambda_s$  are in decimal degrees referred to the Madrid 1870 (Madrid) geographic coordinate reference system and  $H_s$  is gravity-related height in metres.  $B_{00}$  is the longitude (in seconds) of the Madrid meridian measured from the Greenwich meridian; it is the value to be applied to a longitude relative to the Madrid meridian to transform it to a longitude relative to the Greenwich meridian.

The results of these expressions are applied through the formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{\text{ED50}} &= \varphi_{\text{M1870(M)}} + d\varphi \\ \text{and } \lambda_{\text{ED50}} &= \lambda_{\text{M1870(M)}} + d\lambda. \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**

Input point coordinate reference system: Madrid 1870 (Madrid) (geographic 2D)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_s &= 42^\circ 38' 52.77'' \text{N} \\ &= +42.647992 \text{ degrees} \\ \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_s &= 3^\circ 39' 34.57'' \text{E of Madrid} \\ &= +3.659603 \text{ degrees from the Madrid meridian.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Gravity-related height } H_s = 0 \text{ m}$$

For the north zone transformation:

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &= 11.328779 & B_{00} &= -13276.58 \\ A_1 &= -0.1674 & B_0 &= 2.5079425 \\ A_2 &= -0.03852 & B_1 &= 0.08352 \\ A_3 &= 0.0000379 & B_2 &= -0.00864 \\ & & B_3 &= -0.0000038 \end{aligned}$$

$$d\varphi = +4.05 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then latitude } \varphi_{\text{ED50}} &= 42^\circ 38' 52.77'' \text{N} + 4.05'' \\ &= 42^\circ 38' 56.82'' \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

$$d\lambda = -13270.54 \text{ seconds} = -3^\circ 41' 10.54''$$

$$\text{Then longitude } \lambda_{\text{ED50}} = 3^\circ 39' 34.57'' \text{E} - 3^\circ 41' 10.54''$$

= 0°01'35.97"W of Greenwich.

### 2.3.2 Miscellaneous Linear Coordinate Operations

An affine 2D transformation is used for converting or transforming a coordinate reference system possibly with non-orthogonal axes and possibly different units along the two axes to an isometric coordinate reference system (i.e. a system of which the axes are orthogonal and have equal scale units, for example a projected CRS). The transformation therefore involves a change of origin, differential change of axis orientation and a differential scale change. The EPSG dataset distinguishes five methods to implement this class of coordinate operation:

- the parametric representation,
- the geometric representation,
- a simplified case of the geometric representation known as the Similarity Transformation in which the degrees of freedom are constrained.
- two variations of the geometric representation for seismic bin grids.

#### 2.3.2.1 Affine Parametric Transformation

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9624)

Mathematical and survey literature usually provides the parametric representation of the affine transformation. The parametric algorithm is commonly used for rectification of digitised maps. It is often embedded in CAD software and Geographic Information Systems where it is frequently referred to as “rubber sheeting”.

The formula in matrix form is as follows:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \mathbf{V}_{TO} + \mathbf{R} * \mathbf{V}_S$$

where:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{V}_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} A_0 \\ B_0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & A_2 \\ B_1 & B_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{V}_S = \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

or using algebraic coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= A_0 + A_1 * X_S + A_2 * Y_S \\ Y_T &= B_0 + B_1 * X_S + B_2 * Y_S \end{aligned}$$

where

$X_T, Y_T$  are the coordinates of a point P in the target coordinate reference system;  
 $X_S, Y_S$  are the coordinates of P in the source coordinate reference system.

This form of describing an affine transformation is analogous to the general polynomial transformation formulas (section 3.1 above). Although it is somewhat artificial, an affine transformation could be considered to be a first order general polynomial transformation but without the reduction to source and target evaluation points.

#### Reversibility

The reverse operation is another affine parametric transformation using the same formulas but with different parameter values. The reverse parameter values, indicated by a prime ('), can be calculated from those of the forward operation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 D &= A_1 * B_2 - A_2 * B_1 \\
 A_0' &= (A_2 * B_0 - B_2 * A_0) / D \\
 B_0' &= (B_1 * A_0 - A_1 * B_0) / D \\
 A_1' &= +B_2 / D \\
 A_2' &= -A_2 / D \\
 B_1' &= -B_1 / D \\
 B_2' &= +A_1 / D
 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_S &= A_0' + A_1' * X_T + A_2' * Y_T \\
 Y_S &= B_0' + B_1' * X_T + B_2' * Y_T
 \end{aligned}$$

Or in matrix form:

$$V_S = R^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

**2.3.2.2 Affine General Geometric Transformation**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9623)

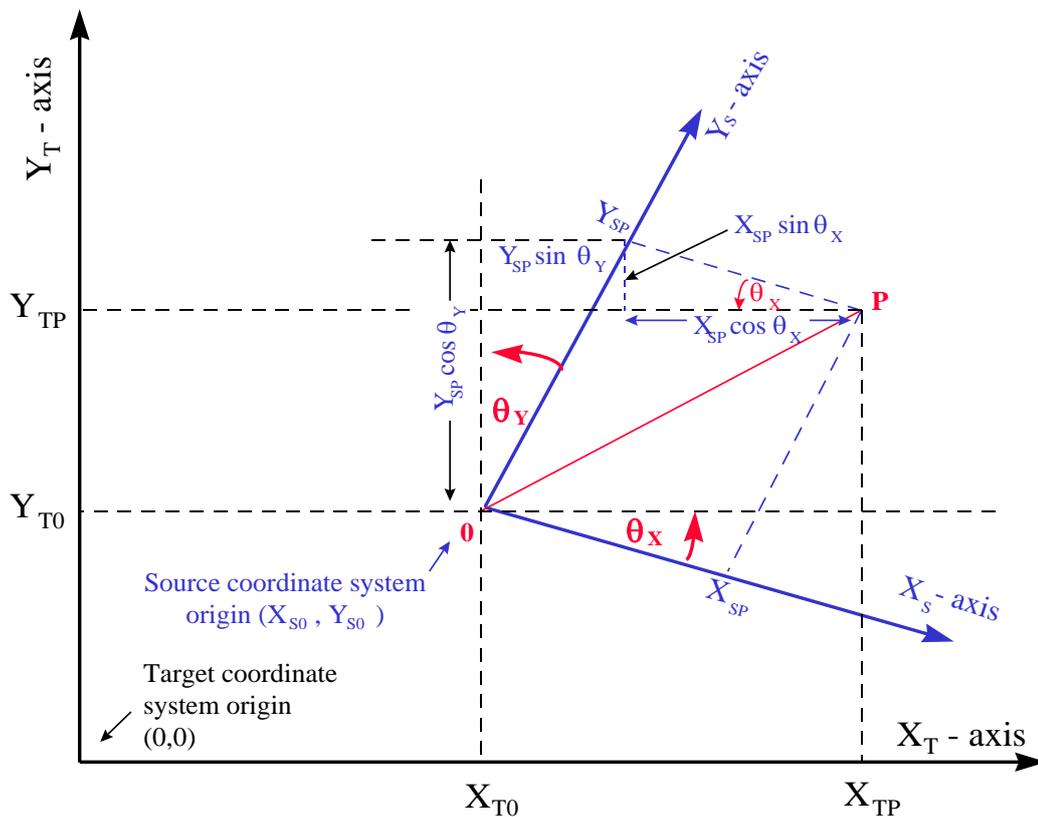


Figure 14 – Geometric representation of the affine coordinate transformation  
 (Please note that to prevent cluttering of the figure the scale parameters of the X<sub>s</sub> and Y<sub>s</sub> axes have been omitted).

From the diagram above it can be seen that:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_{TP} &= X_{TO} + Y_{SP} * \sin \theta_Y + X_{SP} * \cos \theta_X = X_{TO} + X_{SP} * \cos \theta_X + Y_{SP} * \sin \theta_Y \\
 Y_{TP} &= Y_{TO} + Y_{SP} * \cos \theta_Y - X_{SP} * \sin \theta_X = Y_{TO} - X_{SP} * \sin \theta_X + Y_{SP} * \cos \theta_Y
 \end{aligned}$$

The scaling of both source and target coordinate reference systems adds some complexity to this formula. The operation will often be applied to transform an engineering coordinate reference system to a projected coordinate reference system. The orthogonal axes of the projected coordinate reference system have identical

same units. The engineering coordinate reference system may have different units of measure on its two axes: these have scale ratios of  $M_X$  and  $M_Y$  respective to the axes of the projected coordinate reference system.

The projected coordinate reference system is nominally defined to be in well-known units, e.g. metres. However, the distortion characteristics of the map projection only preserve true scale along certain defined lines or curves, hence the projected coordinate reference system's unit of measure is strictly speaking only valid along those lines or curves. Everywhere else its scale is distorted by the map projection. For conformal map projections the distortion at any point can be expressed by the point scale factor 'k' for that point. Please note that this point scale factor 'k' should NOT be confused with the scale factor at the natural origin of the projection, denominated by 'k<sub>0</sub>'. (For non-conformal map projections the scale distortion at a point is bearing-dependent and will not be described in this document).

It has developed as working practice to choose the origin of the source (engineering) coordinate reference system as the point in which to calculate this point scale factor 'k', although for engineering coordinate reference systems with a large coverage area a point in the middle of the area may be a better choice.

Adding the scaling between each pair of axes and dropping the suffix for point P, after rearranging the terms we have the geometric representation of the affine transformation:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= X_{TO} + X_S * k * M_X * \cos \theta_X + Y_S * k * M_Y * \sin \theta_Y \\ Y_T &= Y_{TO} - X_S * k * M_X * \sin \theta_X + Y_S * k * M_Y * \cos \theta_Y \end{aligned}$$

where:

- $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system, expressed in the target coordinate reference system;
- $M_X, M_Y$  = the length of one unit of the source axis, expressed in units of the target axis, for the first and second source and target axes pairs respectively;
- k = point scale factor of the target coordinate reference system at a chosen reference point;
- $\theta_X, \theta_Y$  = the angles about which the source coordinate reference system axes  $X_S$  and  $Y_S$  must be rotated to coincide with the target coordinate reference system axes  $X_T$  and  $Y_T$  respectively (counter-clockwise being positive).

Alternatively, in matrix form:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \mathbf{V}_{TO} + \mathbf{R}_I * k * \mathbf{S}_I * \mathbf{V}_S$$

where:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{V}_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{V}_S = \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\mathbf{R}_I = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_X & \sin \theta_Y \\ -\sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_Y \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{S}_I = \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_X & \sin \theta_Y \\ -\sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_Y \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

Comparing the algebraic representation with the parameters of the parametric form in section 2.3.2.1 above it can be seen that the parametric and geometric forms of the affine coordinate transformation are

related as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &= X_{TO} \\ A_1 &= k * M_X * \cos \theta_X \\ A_2 &= k * M_Y * \sin \theta_Y \\ B_0 &= Y_{TO} \\ B_1 &= -k * M_X * \sin \theta_X \\ B_2 &= k * M_Y * \cos \theta_Y \end{aligned}$$

### Reversibility

For the Affine Geometric Transformation, the reverse operation can be described by a different formula, as shown below, in which the same parameter values as the forward transformation may be used. In matrix form:

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_I^{-1} * R_I^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{k \cdot Z} * \begin{pmatrix} 1/M_X & 0 \\ 0 & 1/M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_Y & -\sin \theta_Y \\ \sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_X \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $Z = \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)$ ;

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta_Y - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta_Y] / [k * M_X * \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta_X + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta_X] / [k * M_Y * \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)]$$

### Orthogonal case

If the source coordinate reference system happens to have orthogonal axes, that is both axes are rotated through the same angle to bring them into the direction of the orthogonal target coordinate reference system axes, i.e.  $\theta_X = \theta_Y = \theta$ , then the Affine Geometric Transformation can be simplified. In matrix form this is:

$$V_T = V_{TO} + R_2 * k * S_I * V_S$$

where  $V_T$ ,  $V_{TO}$ ,  $S_I$  and  $V_S$  are as in the general case but

$$R_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Alternatively,

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_T = X_{TO} + X_S * k * M_X * \cos \theta + Y_S * k * M_Y * \sin \theta$$

$$Y_T = Y_{TO} - X_S * k * M_X * \sin \theta + Y_S * k * M_Y * \cos \theta$$

where:

$X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system, expressed in the target coordinate reference system;

- $M_X, M_Y$  = the length of one unit of the source axis, expressed in units of the target axis, for the X axes and the Y axes respectively;
- $k$  = the point scale factor of the target coordinate reference system at a chosen reference point;
- $\theta$  = the angle through which the source coordinate reference system axes must be rotated to coincide with the target coordinate reference system axes (counter-clockwise is positive). Alternatively, the bearing (clockwise positive) of the source coordinate reference system  $Y_S$ -axis measured relative to target coordinate reference system north.

The reverse formulas of the general case can also be simplified by replacing  $\theta_X$  and  $\theta_Y$  with  $\theta$ . In matrix form:

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_1^{-1} * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{T0})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{k} * \begin{pmatrix} 1/M_X & 0 \\ 0 & 1/M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{T0} \\ Y_T - Y_{T0} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{T0}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{T0}) * \sin \theta] / [k * M_X]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{T0}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{T0}) * \cos \theta] / [k * M_Y]$$

In the EPSG dataset this orthogonal case has been deprecated. The formulas for the general case should be used, inserting  $\theta$  for both  $\theta_X$  and  $\theta_Y$ . The case has been documented as part of the progression through increasing constraints on the degrees of freedom between the general case and the Similarity Transformation.

### **2.3.2.3 Similarity Transformation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9621)

If the source coordinate reference system has orthogonal axes and also happens to have axes of the same scale, that is both axes are scaled by the same factor to bring them into the scale of the target coordinate reference system axes (i.e.  $M_X = M_Y = M$ ), then the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation can be simplified further to a Similarity Transformation.

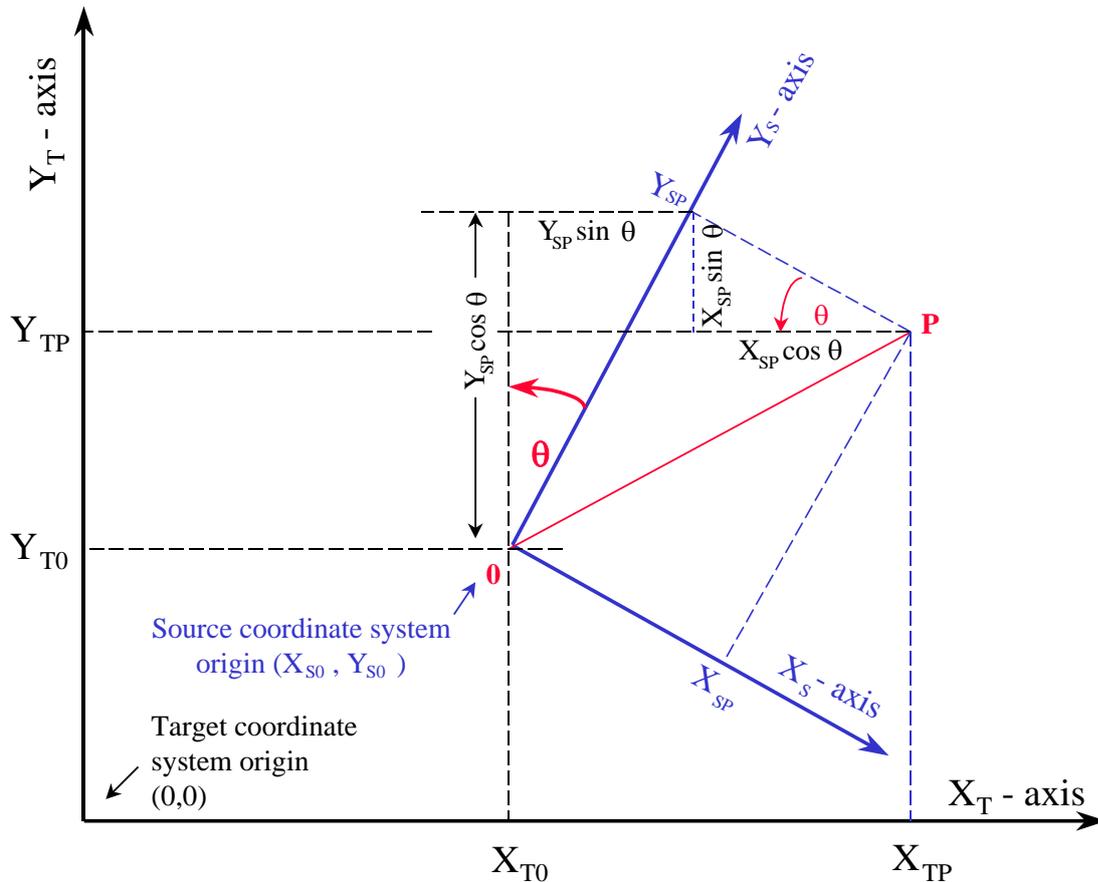


Figure 15 – Similarity Transformation

From the above diagram the Similarity Transformation in algebraic form is:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{TP} &= X_{T0} + Y_{SP} * M * \sin \theta + X_{SP} * M * \cos \theta \\ Y_{TP} &= Y_{T0} + Y_{SP} * M * \cos \theta - X_{SP} * M * \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

Dropping the suffix for point P and rearranging the terms

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= X_{T0} + X_S * M * \cos \theta + Y_S * M * \sin \theta \\ Y_T &= Y_{T0} - X_S * M * \sin \theta + Y_S * M * \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

where:

- $X_{T0}, Y_{T0}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system expressed in the target coordinate reference system;
- $M$  = the length of one unit in the source coordinate reference system expressed in units of the target coordinate reference system;
- $\theta$  = the angle about which the axes of the source coordinate reference system need to be rotated to coincide with the axes of the target coordinate reference system, counter-clockwise being positive. Alternatively, the bearing of the source coordinate reference system  $Y_S$ -axis measured relative to target coordinate reference system north.

The Similarity Transformation can also be described as a special case of the Affine Parametric Transformation where coefficients  $A_1 = B_2$  and  $A_2 = -B_1$ .

In matrix form:

$$V_T = V_{T0} + M * R_2 * V_S$$

where  $V_T$ ,  $V_{TO}$ ,  $R_2$  and  $V_S$  are as in the Affine Orthogonal Geometric Transformation method, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + M * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

### Reversibility

The reverse formula for the Similarity Transformation, in matrix form, is:

$$V_S = (1/M) * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{M} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] / [M]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] / [M]$$

An alternative approach for the reverse operation is to use the same formula as for the forward computation but with different parameter values:

$$X_T = X_{TO}' + X_S * M' * \cos \theta' + Y_S * M' * \sin \theta'$$

$$Y_T = Y_{TO}' - X_S * M' * \sin \theta' + Y_S * M' * \cos \theta'$$

The reverse parameter values, indicated by a prime ('), can be calculated from those of the forward operation as follows:

$$X_{TO}' = (Y_{TO} \sin \theta - X_{TO} \cos \theta) / M$$

$$Y_{TO}' = -(Y_{TO} \cos \theta + X_{TO} \sin \theta) / M$$

$$M' = 1/M$$

$$\theta' = -\theta$$

### **Example**

ED50 / UTM zone 31N to ETRS89 / UTM zone 31N

Parameters of the Similarity Transformation:

$$X_{TO} = -129.549 \text{ metres}$$

$$Y_{TO} = -208.185 \text{ metres}$$

$$M = 1.00000155$$

$$\theta = 1.56504'' = 0.000007588 \text{ rad}$$

Forward computation of ED50 / UTM zone 31N (source) coordinates 300000m E, 4500000m N:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{ETRS89} &= -129.549 + 300000.465 + 34.144 \\ &= 299905.060 \text{ m E} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} N_{ETRS89} &= -208.185 - 2.276 + 4500006.977 \\ &= 4499796.515 \text{ m N} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse computation of ETRS89 / UTM zone 31N coordinates 299905.060m E, 4499796.515m N:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{ED50} &= (300034.609 - 34.144) / 1.00000155 \\ &= 300000.000\text{m E} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} N_{ED50} &= (2.276 + 4500004.700) / 1.00000155 \\ &= 4500000.000\text{m N} \end{aligned}$$

Alternative reverse computation:

First calculate new parameter values:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{TO}' &= 129.5472 \text{ m} \\ Y_{TO}' &= 208.1857 \text{ m} \\ M' &= 0.99999845 \\ \theta' &= -0.000007588 \text{ rad} \end{aligned}$$

Then apply these values to forward formula:

$$\begin{aligned} E_{ED50} &= 129.547 + 299904.595 + (-34.142) = 300000.000 \text{ m} \\ N_{ED50} &= 208.186 - (-2.276) + 4499789.539 = 4500000.000 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

#### When to use the Similarity Transformation

Similarity Transformations can be used when source and target coordinate reference systems

- each have orthogonal axes,
  - each have the same scale along both axes,
- and
- both have the same units of measure,

for example between engineering plant grids and projected coordinate reference systems.

Coordinate Operations between two coordinate reference systems where in either system either the scale along the axes differ or the axes are not orthogonal should be defined as an Affine Transformation in either the parametric or geometric form. But for seismic bin grids see the following section.

#### **2.3.2.4 P6 Right-handed Seismic Bin Grid Transformation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9666)

The P6/98 seismic bin grid exchange format describes a special case of the Affine Geometric Transformation in which

- the source coordinate reference system is a map grid (projected CRS);
- its axes are orthogonal;

and one or both of the following may apply:

- the origin of the bin grid (source coordinate reference system) may be assigned non-zero bin grid coordinates;
- the bin grid (source coordinate reference system) units may increase in increments other than 1, i.e.  $Inc_{SX}$  and  $Inc_{SY}$

The P6/98 exchange format defines the bin grid axes to be named I and J, where the I-axis is rotated 90° clockwise from the J-axis (when viewed from above the plane containing the two axes). This is sometimes

described as 'right-handed'. The method is also described in the SEG-Y revision 1 seismic data exchange format.

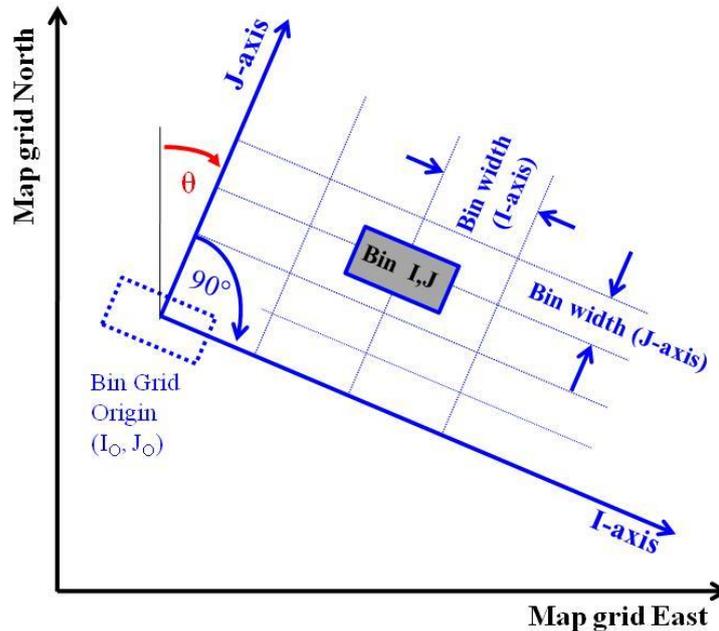


Figure 16 – Relationship of right-handed bin grid to map grid

The defining parameters are:

**P6/98 term**

- Bin grid origin (Io)
- Bin grid origin (Jo)
- Map grid easting of bin grid origin (Eo)
- Map grid northing of bin grid origin (No)
- Scale factor of bin grid (SF)
- Nominal bin width along I axis (I\_bin\_width)
- Nominal bin width along J axis (J\_bin\_width)
- Grid bearing of bin grid J axis ( $\theta$ )
- Bin node increment on I axis (I\_bin\_inc)
- Bin node increment on J axis (J\_bin\_inc)

**Equivalent EPSG dataset term**

- Ordinate 1 of evaluation point in source CRS ( $X_{SO}$ )
- Ordinate 2 of evaluation point in source CRS ( $Y_{SO}$ )
- Ordinate 1 of evaluation point in target CRS ( $X_{TO}$ )
- Ordinate 2 of evaluation point in target CRS ( $Y_{TO}$ )
- Point scale factor (k)
- Scale factor for source coordinate reference system first axis ( $M_X$ )
- Scale factor for source coordinate reference system second axis ( $M_Y$ )
- Rotation angle of source coordinate reference system axes ( $\theta$ )
- Bin node increment on I-axis
- Bin node increment on J-axis

In the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation formulas, the terms  $X_S$ ,  $Y_S$ ,  $M_X$  and  $M_Y$  are replaced by  $(X_S - X_{SO})$ ,  $(Y_S - Y_{SO})$ ,  $(M_X / Inc_{SX})$  and  $(M_Y / Inc_{SY})$  respectively. Thus the forward transformation from bin grid to map grid (source to target coordinate reference system) is:

$$V_T = V_{TO} + R_2 * k * S_2 * V_2$$

where, as in the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation method:

$$V_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad V_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad R_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

but where

$$S_2 = \begin{pmatrix} M_X / \text{Incs}_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y / \text{Incs}_Y \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad V_2 = \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_{SO} \\ Y_S - Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

That is,

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X / \text{Incs}_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y / \text{Incs}_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_{SO} \\ Y_S - Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_T = X_{TO} + [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_X / \text{Incs}_X] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Incs}_Y]$$

$$Y_T = Y_{TO} - [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_X / \text{Incs}_X] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Incs}_Y]$$

Using the symbol notation in the P6/98 document these expressions are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} E \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} E_O \\ N_O \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * SF * \begin{pmatrix} I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc & 0 \\ 0 & J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} I - I_O \\ J - J_O \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$E = E_O + [(I - I_O) * \cos \theta * SF * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_O) * \sin \theta * SF * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

$$N = N_O - [(I - I_O) * \sin \theta * SF * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_O) * \cos \theta * SF * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

For the reverse transformation (map grid to bin grid):

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_2^{-1} * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO}) + V_{SO}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = 1/k * \begin{pmatrix} \text{Incs}_X / M_X & 0 \\ 0 & \text{Incs}_Y / M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_{SO} \\ Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

or algebraically:

$$X_S = \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] * [\text{Incs}_X / (k * M_X)]\} + X_{SO}$$

$$Y_S = \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] * [\text{Incs}_Y / (k * M_Y)]\} + Y_{SO}$$

Using the symbol notation in the P6/98 document these reverse expressions are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} I \\ J \end{pmatrix} = 1/SF * \begin{pmatrix} I\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width & 0 \\ 0 & J\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E - E_O \\ N - N_O \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} I_O \\ J_O \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$I = I_0 + \{[(E - E_0) * \cos \theta - (N - N_0) * \sin \theta] * [I\_bin\_inc / (SF * I\_bin\_width)]\}$$

$$J = J_0 + \{[(E - E_0) * \sin \theta + (N - N_0) * \cos \theta] * [J\_bin\_inc / (SF * J\_bin\_width)]\}$$

**Example:**

This example is given in the P6/98 document. Source coordinate reference system: imaginary 3D seismic acquisition bin grid. The two axes are orthogonal, but the bin width on the I-axis ( $X_S$  axis) is 25 metres, whilst the bin width on the J-axis ( $Y_S$  axis) is 12.5 metres. The origin of the grid has bin values of 1,1.

The target coordinate reference system is a projected CRS (WGS 84 / UTM Zone 31N) upon which the origin of the bin grid is defined at  $E = 456781.0$ ,  $N = 5836723.0$ . The projected coordinate reference system point scale factor at the bin grid origin is 0.99984.

In the map grid (target CRS), the bearing of the bin grid (source CRS) I and J axes are  $110^\circ$  and  $20^\circ$  respectively. Thus the angle through which the bin grid axes need to be rotated to coincide with the map grid axes is  $+20$  degrees.

The transformation parameter values are:

<u>Parameter</u>	<u>EPSG symbol</u>	<u>P6 symbol</u>	<u>Parameter value</u>
Bin grid origin I	$X_{SO}$	$I_0$	1
Bin grid origin J	$Y_{SO}$	$J_0$	1
Bin grid origin Easting	$X_{TO}$	$E_0$	456781.00 m
Bin grid origin Northing	$Y_{TO}$	$N_0$	5836723.00 m
Scale factor of bin grid	$k$	SF	0.99984
Bin Width on I-axis	$M_X$	$I\_bin\_width$	25 m
Bin Width on J-axis	$M_Y$	$J\_bin\_width$	12.5 m
Map grid bearing of bin grid J-axis	$\theta$	$\theta$	20 deg
Bin node increment on I-axis	$Inc_{SX}$	$I\_bin\_inc$	1
Bin node increment on J-axis	$Inc_{SY}$	$J\_bin\_inc$	1

Forward calculation for centre of bin with coordinates:  $I = 300$ ,  $J = 247$ :

$$\begin{aligned} X_T = \text{Easting} &= X_{TO} + [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_X / Inc_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_Y / Inc_{SY}] \\ &= 456781.000 + 7023.078 + 1051.544 \\ &= 464855.62 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_T = \text{Northing} &= Y_{TO} - [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_X / Inc_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_Y / Inc_{SY}] \\ &= 5836723.000 - 2556.192 + 2889.092 \\ &= 5837055.90 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for this point 464 855.62mE, 5 837 055.90mN:

$$\begin{aligned} X_S = X_{SO} &+ \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] * [Inc_{SX} / (k * M_X)]\} \\ &= 300 \text{ bins,} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_S = Y_{SO} &+ \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] * [Inc_{SY} / (k * M_Y)]\} \\ &= 247 \text{ bins} \end{aligned}$$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5209 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 2.3.2.5 P6 Left-handed Seismic Bin Grid Transformation

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1049)

The P6/98 exchange format constrains the bin grid axes to be 'right-handed', i.e. by definition the bin grid I-axis orientation is 90° clockwise from the J-axis when viewed from above the plane of the coordinate system. The P6/11 format extends the P6/98 format to allow for a 'left-handed' bin grid in which the I-axis orientation is 90° counter-clockwise from the J-axis when viewed from above the plane of the coordinate system. (Using the P6/98 format this can be accomplished through giving the *Bin node increment on I-axis* parameter a negative value).

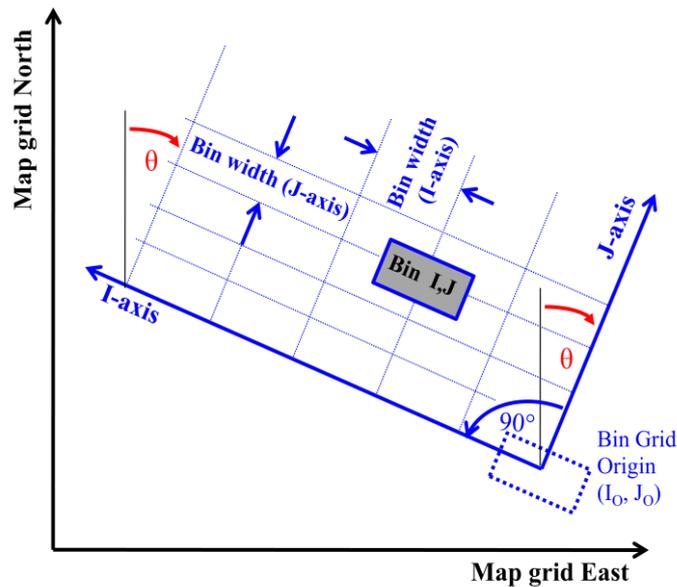


Figure 17 – Relationship of left-handed bin grid to map grid

The transformation from bin grid to map grid is:

$$V_T = V_{T0} + R_2 * k * S_3 * V_2$$

where

$$S_3 = \begin{pmatrix} M_X / \text{Incs}_X * -1 & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y / \text{Incs}_Y \end{pmatrix}$$

and other matrices are as defined earlier,

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} E \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} E_0 \\ N_0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * SF * \begin{pmatrix} I_{\text{bin\_width}} / -I_{\text{bin\_inc}} & 0 \\ 0 & J_{\text{bin\_width}} / J_{\text{bin\_inc}} \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} I - I_0 \\ J - J_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$E = E_0 - [(I - I_0) * \cos \theta * SF * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_0) * \sin \theta * SF * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

$$N = N_0 + [(I - I_0) * \sin \theta * SF * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_0) * \cos \theta * SF * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

For the reverse transformation (from map grid to bin grid):

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_3^{-1} * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO}) + V_{SO}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} I \\ J \end{pmatrix} = 1/SF * \begin{pmatrix} -I\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width & 0 \\ 0 & J\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E - E_0 \\ N - N_0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} I_0 \\ J_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$I = I_0 - \{[(E - E_0) * \cos \theta - (N - N_0) * \sin \theta] * [I\_bin\_inc / (SF * I\_bin\_width)]\}$$

$$J = J_0 + \{[(E - E_0) * \sin \theta + (N - N_0) * \cos \theta] * [J\_bin\_inc / (SF * J\_bin\_width)]\}$$

**Example:**

This example is given in the OGP P6/11 user guide. Source coordinate reference system: imaginary 3D seismic acquisition bin grid. The bin width on the I-axis (X<sub>S</sub> axis) is 82.5 US survey feet, the bin width on the J-axis (Y<sub>S</sub> axis) is 41.25 US survey feet. The origin of the bin grid has bin values of I=5000, J=0.

The target coordinate reference system is a projected CRS [NAD27 / BLM 16N (ftUS)] upon which the origin of the bin grid is defined at E = 871200, N = 10280160. As the survey was acquired on the map grid, the bin grid scale factor at the bin grid origin is 1.

In the map grid (target CRS), the bearing of the bin grid (source CRS) I and J axes are 250° and 340° respectively. Thus the angle through which the bin grid axes need to be rotated to coincide with the map grid axes is +340 degrees.

The transformation parameter values are:

<u>Parameter</u>	<u>EPSG symbol</u>	<u>P6 symbol</u>	<u>Parameter value</u>
Bin grid origin I	X <sub>SO</sub>	I <sub>0</sub>	5000
Bin grid origin J	Y <sub>SO</sub>	J <sub>0</sub>	0
Bin grid origin Easting	X <sub>TO</sub>	E <sub>0</sub>	871200 ftUS
Bin grid origin Northing	Y <sub>TO</sub>	N <sub>0</sub>	10280160 ftUS
Scale factor of bin grid	k	SF	1
Bin Width on I-axis	M <sub>X</sub>	I_bin_width	82.5 ftUS
Bin Width on J-axis	M <sub>Y</sub>	J_bin_width	41.25 ftUS
Map grid bearing of bin grid J-axis	θ	θ	340 deg
Bin node increment on I-axis	Inc <sub>SX</sub>	I_bin_inc	1
Bin node increment on J-axis	Inc <sub>SY</sub>	J_bin_inc	1

Forward calculation for centre of bin with coordinates: I = 4700, J = 247:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T = \text{Easting} &= X_{TO} - [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY}] \\ &= 890\,972.63 \text{ ftUS.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_T = \text{Northing} &= Y_{TO} + [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY}] \\ &= 10\,298\,199.29 \text{ ftUS.} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for this point 890 972.63 ftUS E, 10 298 199.29 ftUS N:

$$\begin{aligned} X_S = X_{SO} - \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] * [\text{Inc}_{SX} / (k * M_X)]\} \\ = 4700 \text{ bins,} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_S = Y_{SO} + \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] * [\text{Inc}_{SY} / (k * M_Y)]\} \\ = 247 \text{ bins} \end{aligned}$$

## **2.4 Coordinate Transformations**

### **2.4.1 Offsets - general**

Several transformation methods which utilise offsets in coordinate values are recognised. The offset methods may be in n-dimensions. These include longitude rotations, geographic coordinate offsets, Cartesian grid offsets and vertical offsets.

Mathematically, if the origin of a one-dimensional coordinate system is shifted along the positive axis and placed at a point with ordinate A, then the transformation formula is:

$$X_{\text{new}} = X_{\text{old}} - A$$

However it is common practice in coordinate system transformations to apply the shift as an addition, with the sign of the shift parameter value having been suitably reversed to compensate for the practice. Since 1999 this practice has been adopted for the EPSG dataset. Hence transformations allow calculation of coordinates in the target system by adding a correction parameter to the coordinate values of the point in the source system:

$$X_t = X_s + A$$

where  $X_s$  and  $X_t$  are the values of the coordinates in the source and target coordinate systems and A is the value of the transformation parameter to transform source coordinate reference system coordinate to target coordinate reference system coordinate.

Offset methods are reversible. For the reverse transformation, the offset parameter value is applied with its sign reversed.

#### **Example**

Examples of input and output for the Longitude Rotation method (EPSG method code 9601) may be found in test procedure 5208 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

#### **2.4.1.1 Cartesian Grid Offsets from Form Function**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1036)

In the German state of Schleswig-Holstein the Cartesian grid offsets to be applied are determined through interpolation within an irregular grid of points at which coordinates in both source and target coordinate

reference systems are given. The interpolation uses a finite element method form function procedure described in papers by Joachim Boljen in *Zeitschrift für Vermessungswesen* (ZfV, the Journal of the German Association of Surveying) volume 128 of April 2003 pages 244-250 and volume 129 of April 2004 pages 258-260.

## **2.4.2 Transformations between Vertical Coordinate Reference Systems**

### **2.4.2.1 Vertical Offset**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9616)

As described in 2.4.1, a vertical offset allows calculation of coordinates in the target vertical coordinate reference system by adding a correction parameter A to the coordinate values of the point in the source system:

$$X_2 = X_1 + A_{1>2}$$

where

$X_2$  = value in the forward target vertical coordinate reference system.

$X_1$  = value in the forward source vertical coordinate reference system.

$A_{1>2}$  is the offset to be applied for the transformation from CRS 1 to CRS 2. Its value for the forward calculation is the value of the origin of the source CRS 1 in the target CRS 2.

For the **reverse** transformation from CRS 2 to CRS 1 the same formula is used but with the sign of the offset  $A_{1>2}$  reversed:

$$X_1 = X_2 + (-A_{1>2})$$

#### Change of axis direction

The above formulas apply only when the positive direction of the axis of each CRS is the same. If there is a requirement to transform heights in the source CRS to depths in the target CRS or to transform depths in the source CRS to heights in the target CRS, the formulas must be modified to:

for the forward transformation:  $X_2 = mX_1 + A_{1>2}$

for the reverse transformation:  $X_1 = m[X_2 + (-A_{1>2})]$

where m is a direction modifier,

$m = +1$  if the transformation involves no change of axis direction, i.e. height to height or depth to depth

$m = -1$  if the transformation involves a change of axis direction, i.e. height to depth or depth to height

These modified formulas remain valid whether or not there is a change in axis direction.

#### Change of unit

A further modification allows for source CRS axis, target CRS axis or offset to be in different units giving the general formulas:

for the forward transformation:  $X_2 = \{m * (X_1 * U_1) + (A_{1>2} * U_A)\} / U_2$

for the reverse transformation:  $X_1 = \{m * [(X_2 * U_2) + (-A_{1>2} * U_A)]\} / U_1$

where  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$  and  $U_A$  are unit conversion ratios for the two systems and the offset value respectively.  $U = [(factor\ b) / (factor\ c)]$  from the EPSG Dataset Unit of Measure table, populated with respect to the linear base unit, metre. U has a value of 0.3048 for the international foot.

#### **Example:**

For coordinate transformation: KOC CD height to KOC WD depth (ft) (1), code 5453:

Transformation Parameter: Vertical Offset  $A_{1>2} = 15.55$  ft

Source CRS axis direction is 'up' and Target CRS axis direction is 'down', hence  $m = -1$

Offset unit = "foot" for which (from UoM table)  $b = 0.3048$  and  $c = 1$ , then  $U_A = b/c = 0.3048$

Source CRS (KOC CD height) coordinate axis unit = "metre",  $b = 1$ ,  $c = 1$ , then  $U_s = 1$

Target CRS (KOC WD depth) coordinate axis unit = "foot",  $b = 0.3048$ ,  $c = 1$ , then  $U_t = 0.3048$

Consider a point having a gravity-related height  $H_{CD}$  in the KOC Construction Datum height system of 2.55 m. Its value in the KOC Well Datum depth (ft) system is

$$D_{WD} = \{ -1 * (2.55 * 1) + (15.55 * 3048) \} / 0.3048$$

$$= 7.18 \text{ ft}$$

For the reverse calculation to transform the Well Datum depth of 7.18 ft to Construction Datum height:

$$H_{CD} = \{ -1 * [(7.18 * 0.3048) + (-(15.55) * 0.3048)] \} / 1$$

$$= 2.55 \text{ m}$$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5210 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

#### 2.4.2.2 Vertical Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data

The relationship between some gravity-related coordinate reference systems is available through gridded data sets of offsets (sometimes called height differences). The vertical offset at a point is first interpolated within the grid of values.

For the purposes of interpolation, horizontal coordinates of the point are required. However the transformation remains 1-dimensional. Although the providers of some gridded data sets suggest a particular interpolation method within the grid, generally the density of grid nodes should be such that any reasonable grid interpolation method will give the same offset value within an appropriately small tolerance. Bi-linear interpolation is the most usual grid interpolation mechanism. The EPSG dataset differentiates methods by the format of the gridded data file. The grid file format is given in documentation available from the information source. An example is *Vertcon* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9658) which is used by the US National Geodetic Survey for transformation between the NGVD29 and NAVD88 gravity-related height systems. Because the difference in NAD27 and NAD83 horizontal coordinate values of a point is insignificant in comparison to the rate of change of height offset, interpolation within the *Vertcon* gridded data file may be made in either NAD27 or NAD83 horizontal systems.

Once the vertical offset value has been derived from the grid it is applied through the formulas given in the previous section.

#### 2.4.2.3 Vertical Offset and Slope

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9657)

In Europe, national vertical systems are related to the pan-European vertical system through three transformation parameters and the formula:

$$X_2 = m * X_1 + \{ A_{1>2} + [I_{\phi 1>2} * \rho_0 * (\phi - \phi_0)] + [I_{\lambda 1>2} * v_0 * (\lambda - \lambda_0) * \cos\phi] \}$$
 where

$X_2$  = value in the target vertical coordinate reference system.

$X_1$  = value in the source vertical coordinate reference system.

m indicates a direction change of the CRS axis:

- m = +1 when no direction change takes place (height to height or depth to depth),
- m = -1 in case of a direction change (height to depth or depth to height).

$A_{1>2}$  is the offset to be applied for the transformation from CRS 1 to CRS 2. Its value is the value of the origin of the source CRS 1 in the target CRS 2.

$I_{\phi 1>2}$  is the value in radians of the slope parameter in the latitude domain, i.e. in the plane of the meridian, derived at an evaluation point with coordinates of  $\phi_0, \lambda_0$ . When  $I_{\phi}$  is positive then to the north of the evaluation point latitude  $\phi_0$  the source and target CRS surfaces converge.

$I_{\lambda 1>2}$  is the value in radians of the slope parameter in the longitude domain, i.e. perpendicular to the plane of the meridian. When  $I_{\lambda}$  is positive then to the east of the evaluation point longitude  $\lambda_0$  the CRS surfaces converge.

$\rho_0$  is the radius of curvature of the meridian at latitude  $\phi_0$ ,

$$\text{where } \rho_0 = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi_0)^{3/2}$$

$v_0$  is the radius of curvature on the prime vertical (i.e. perpendicular to the meridian) at latitude  $\phi_0$ ,

$$\text{where } v_0 = a/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \phi_0)^{1/2}$$

$\phi, \lambda$  are the horizontal coordinates of the point in the ETRS89 coordinate reference system, in radians.

$\phi_0, \lambda_0$  are the coordinates of the evaluation point in the ETRS89 coordinate reference system, in radians.

The horizontal location of the point must always be given in ETRS89 terms. Care is required where compound coordinate reference systems are in use: if the horizontal coordinates of the point are known in the local CRS they must first be transformed to ETRS89 values.

### Reversibility

Similarly to the Vertical Offset method described in previous sections above, the Vertical Offset and Slope method is reversible using a slightly different formula to the forward formula and in which the signs of the parameters A,  $I_{\phi}$  and  $I_{\lambda}$  from the forward transformation are reversed in the reverse transformation:

$$X_1 = m * \{X_2 + -A_{1>2} + [-I_{\phi 1>2} * \rho_0 * (\phi - \phi_0)] + [-I_{\lambda 1>2} * v_0 * (\lambda - \lambda_0) * \cos \phi]\}$$

### Example:

For coordinate transformation LN02 height to EVRF2000 height (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:	$\phi_{S0} =$	46°55'N	=	0.818850307 rad
Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:	$\lambda_{S0} =$	8°11'E (of Greenwich)	=	0.142826110 rad
Transformation Parameters:	A =	-0.245 m		
	$I_{\phi} =$	-0.210"	=	-0.000001018 rad
	$I_{\lambda} =$	-0.032"	=	-0.000000155 rad

Source axis direction is "up", target axis direction is "up", m = +1

Consider a point having a gravity-related height in the LN02 system ( $H_s$ ) of 473.0m and with horizontal coordinates in the ETRS89 geographic coordinate reference system of:

$$\text{Latitude } \phi_{\text{ETRS89}} = 47^{\circ}20'00.00''\text{N} = 0.826122513 \text{ rad}$$

$$\text{Longitude } \lambda_{\text{ETRS89}} = 9^{\circ}40'00.00''\text{E} = 0.168715161 \text{ rad}$$

ETRS89 uses the GRS1980 ellipsoid for which a = 6378137 m and 1/f = 298.25722221

Then	$\rho_0 =$	6369526.88 m
	$I_{\phi}$ term =	-0.047 m
	$v_0 =$	6389555.64 m
	$I_{\lambda}$ term =	-0.017 m

$$\text{whence EVRF2000 height } X_2 = H_{\text{EVRF}} = +1 * 473.0 + (-0.245) + (-0.047) + (-0.017) = 472.69 \text{ m.}$$

For the reverse transform from EVRF2000 height of 472.69 m to LN02 height:

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 = H_{LN02} &= +1 * \{472.69 + [ -(-0.245) ] + [ -(-0.047) ] + [ -(-0.017) ] \} \\ &= 473.00 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

### **2.4.3 Transformations between Geocentric Coordinate Reference Systems**

The methods in this section operate in the geocentric coordinate domain. However they are most frequently used as the middle part of a transformation of coordinates from one geographic coordinate reference system into another forming a concatenated operation of:

$$[(\text{geographic to geocentric}) + (\text{geocentric to geocentric}) + (\text{geocentric to geographic})]$$

See section 2.4.4.1 below for a fuller description of these concatenated operations and Guidance Note 7 part 1 for a general discussion of implicit concatenated operations created by application software.

The formulae given in the remainder of this section are for the transformation in the geocentric coordinate domain.

#### **2.4.3.1 Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1031)

If we assume that the axes of the ellipsoids are parallel, that the prime meridian is Greenwich, and that there is no scale difference between the source and target coordinate reference system, then geocentric coordinate reference systems may be related to each other through three translations (colloquially known as shifts) **dX**, **dY**, **dZ** in the sense from source geocentric coordinate reference system to target geocentric coordinate reference system. They may then be applied as

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= X_s + dX \\ Y_t &= Y_s + dY \\ Z_t &= Z_s + dZ \end{aligned}$$

#### **Example:**

Consider a North Sea point with coordinates derived by GPS satellite in the WGS84 geocentric coordinate reference system, with coordinates of:

$$\begin{aligned} X_s &= 3771\ 793.97 \text{ m} \\ Y_s &= 140\ 253.34 \text{ m} \\ Z_s &= 5124\ 304.35 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

whose coordinates are required in terms of the ED50 coordinate reference system which takes the International 1924 ellipsoid. The three parameter geocentric translations method's parameter values from WGS84 to ED50 for this North Sea area are given as  $dX = +84.87\text{m}$ ,  $dY = +96.49\text{m}$ ,  $dZ = +116.95\text{m}$ .

Applying the quoted geocentric translations to these, we obtain new geocentric values now related to ED50:

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= 3771\ 793.97 + 84.87 = 3771\ 878.84 \text{ m} \\ Y_t &= 140\ 253.34 + 96.49 = 140\ 349.83 \text{ m} \\ Z_t &= 5124\ 304.35 + 116.95 = 5124\ 421.30 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5211 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 2.4.3.2 Helmert 7-parameter transformations

#### 2.4.3.2.1 Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1033)

It is rare for the condition assumed in the geocentric translation method above – that the axes of source and target systems are exactly parallel and the two systems have an identical scale – is true. Further parameters to account for rotation and scale differences may be introduced. This is usually described as a simplified 7-parameter Helmert transformation, expressed in matrix form in what is known as the "Bursa-Wolf" formula:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -R_Z & +R_Y \\ +R_Z & 1 & -R_X \\ -R_Y & +R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \\ Z_S \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

The parameters are commonly referred to defining the transformation "from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system", whereby (X<sub>S</sub>, Y<sub>S</sub>, Z<sub>S</sub>) are the coordinates of the point in the source geocentric coordinate reference system and (X<sub>T</sub>, Y<sub>T</sub>, Z<sub>T</sub>) are the coordinates of the point in the target geocentric coordinate reference system. But that does not define the parameters uniquely; neither is the definition of the parameters implied in the formula, as is often believed. However, the following definition, which is consistent with the "Position Vector Transformation" convention (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9606), is common E&P survey practice, used by the International Association of Geodesy (IAG) and recommended by ISO 19111:

(dX, dY, dZ) : Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to transform from source system to target system; also: the coordinates of the origin of the source coordinate reference system in the target coordinate reference system.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) : Rotations to be applied to the point's vector. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the position vector when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate reference system in the positive direction of that axis; e.g. a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source system to target system will result in a larger longitude value for the point in the target system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

M : The scale correction to be made to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale in the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1 + dS * 10^{-6})$ , where dS is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

#### **Example:**

Transformation from WGS 72 to WGS 84 (EPSG dataset transformation code 1238). Transformation parameter values:

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\ dY &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\ dZ &= +4.5 \text{ m} \\ R_X &= 0.000 \text{ sec} \\ R_Y &= 0.000 \text{ sec} \\ R_Z &= +0.554 \text{ sec} = 0.000002685868 \text{ radians} \\ dS &= +0.219 \text{ ppm} \end{aligned}$$

Input point coordinate system: WGS 72 (Cartesian geocentric coordinates):

$$\begin{aligned} X_S &= 3\ 657\ 660.66 \text{ m} \\ Y_S &= 255\ 768.55 \text{ m} \\ Z_S &= 5\ 201\ 382.11 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Application of the 7 parameter Position Vector Transformation results in:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= 3\,657\,660.78 \text{ m} \\ Y_T &= 255\,778.43 \text{ m} \\ Z_T &= 5\,201\,387.75 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

on the WGS 84 geocentric coordinate reference system.

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5203 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### Reversibility

The Helmert 7-parameter transformations is an approximation formula that is valid only when the transformation parameters are small compared to the magnitude of the geocentric coordinates. Under this condition the transformation is considered to be reversible for practical purposes.

#### 2.4.3.2.2 Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1032)

Although being common practice particularly in the European E&P industry, the Position Vector Transformation sign convention is not universally accepted. A variation on this formula is also used, particularly in the USA E&P industry. That formula is based on the same definition of translation and scale parameters, but a different definition of the rotation parameters. The associated convention is known as the "Coordinate Frame Rotation" convention.

The formula is:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & +R_Z & -R_Y \\ -R_Z & 1 & +R_X \\ +R_Y & -R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \\ Z_S \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

and the parameters are defined as:

(dX, dY, dZ) : Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to transform from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system; also: the coordinates of the origin of source coordinate reference system in the target frame.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) : Rotations to be applied to the coordinate reference frame. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation of the frame about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the coordinate reference frame when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate reference system in the positive direction of that axis, that is a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system will result in a smaller longitude value for the point in the target coordinate reference system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

M : The scale factor to be applied to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale of the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1+dS*10^{-6})$ , where dS is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

In the absence of rotations the two formulas are identical; the difference is solely in the rotations. The name of the second method reflects this.

Note that the same rotation that is defined as positive in the Position Vector method is consequently negative in the Coordinate Frame method and vice versa. It is therefore crucial that the convention underlying the definition of the rotation parameters is clearly understood and is communicated when exchanging transformation parameter values, so that the parameter values may be associated with the correct coordinate transformation method (algorithm).

The same example as for the Position Vector Transformation can be calculated, however the following transformation parameters have to be applied to achieve the same input and output in terms of coordinate values:

Transformation parameters Coordinate Frame Rotation convention:

$$\begin{aligned}
 dX &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\
 dY &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\
 dZ &= +4.5 \text{ m} \\
 R_X &= -0.000 \text{ sec} \\
 R_Y &= -0.000 \text{ sec} \\
 R_Z &= -0.554 \text{ sec} = -0.000002685868 \text{ radians} \\
 dS &= +0.219 \text{ ppm}
 \end{aligned}$$

Please note that only the rotation has changed sign as compared to the Position Vector Transformation. The Position Vector convention is used by IAG and recommended by ISO 19111.

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5204 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

The comments on reversibility of the Position Vector method apply equally to the Coordinate Frame method.

### **2.4.3.3 Molodensky-Badekas transformation (geocentric domain)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1034)

To eliminate high correlation between the translations and rotations in the derivation of parameter values for the Helmert transformation methods discussed in the previous section, instead of the rotations being derived about the geocentric coordinate reference system origin they may be derived at a location within the points used in the determination. Three additional parameters, the coordinates of the rotation point, are then required, making 10 parameters in total. The formula is:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & +R_Z & -R_Y \\ -R_Z & 1 & +R_X \\ +R_Y & -R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_P \\ Y_S - Y_P \\ Z_S - Z_P \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_P \\ Y_P \\ Z_P \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

and the parameters are defined as:

(dX, dY, dZ) : Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate system in order to transform from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system; also: the coordinates of the origin of source coordinate reference system in the target frame.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) : Rotations to be applied to the coordinate reference frame. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation of the frame about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the coordinate reference frame when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate system in the positive direction of that axis, that is a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system will result in a smaller longitude value for the point in the target coordinate reference system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

(X<sub>P</sub>, Y<sub>P</sub>, Z<sub>P</sub>) : Coordinates of the point about which the coordinate reference frame is rotated, given in the source Cartesian coordinate reference system.

**M** : The scale factor to be applied to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale of the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1+dS*10^{-6})$ , where dS is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

The Coordinate Frame Rotation method discussed in the previous section is a specific case of the Molodensky-Badekas transformation in which the evaluation point is the origin of the geocentric coordinate system, at which geocentric coordinate values are zero.

### **Reversibility**

The Molodensky-Badekas transformation strictly speaking is not reversible, i.e. in principle the same parameter values cannot be used to execute the reverse transformation. This is because the evaluation point coordinates are in the forward direction source coordinate reference system and the rotations have been derived about this point. They should not be applied about the point having the same coordinate values in the target coordinate reference system, as is required for the reverse transformation. However, in practical application there are exceptions when applied to the approximation of small differences in the geometry of a set of points in two different coordinate reference systems. The typical vector difference in coordinate values is in the order of  $6*10^1$  to  $6*10^2$  metres, whereas the evaluation point on or near the surface of the earth is  $6.3*10^6$  metres from the origin of the coordinate systems at the Earth's centre. This difference of four or five orders of magnitude allows the transformation in practice to be considered reversible. Note that in the reverse transformation, only the signs of the translation and rotation parameter values and scale are reversed; the coordinates of the evaluation point remain unchanged.

### **Example**

See section 2.4.4.1 below for an example. Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5205 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

## **2.4.4 Transformations between Geographic Coordinate Reference Systems**

### **2.4.4.1 Transformations using geocentric methods**

Transformation of coordinates from one geographic coordinate reference system into another is often carried out as a concatenation of the following operations:

(geographic to geocentric) + (geocentric to geocentric) + (geocentric to geographic)

See section 4.4 of Guidance Note 7 part 1 for a fuller description of the concatenation technique.

The middle step of the concatenated transformation, from geocentric to geocentric, may be through any of the methods described in section 2.4.3 above: 3-parameter geocentric translations, 7-parameter Helmert or Bursa-Wolf transformation or 10-parameter Molodensky-Badekas transformation. The geographic 3D to/from geocentric steps of the concatenated transformation are described in section 2.2.1 above. If involving geographic 2D coordinates, the techniques described in section 2.2.4 above (geographic 3D to/from 2D) may also be used as additional steps at each end of the concatenation.

The concatenated geodetic transformations are:

Geocentric Translations (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9603

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	1031	2.4.3.1
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Geocentric Translations (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1035

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	1031	2.4.3.1
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Position Vector transformation (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9606

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain)	1033	2.4.3.2.1
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Position Vector transformation (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1037

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain)	1033	2.4.3.2.1
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Coordinate Frame Rotation (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9607

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain)	1032	2.4.3.2.2
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Coordinate Frame Rotation (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1038

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain)	1032	2.4.3.2.2
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Molodensky-Badekas (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9636

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain)	1034	2.4.3.3
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Molodensky-Badekas (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1039

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain)	1034	2.4.3.3
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

**Example**

Transformation from La Canoa to REGVEN between geographic 2D coordinate reference systems (EPSG dataset transformation code 1771).

The ten Molodensky-Badekas transformation parameter values for this transformation are:

dX	=	-270.933 m	
dY	=	+115.599 m	
dZ	=	-360.226 m	
R <sub>X</sub>	=	-5.266 sec	= -0.000025530288 radians
R <sub>Y</sub>	=	-1.238 sec	= -0.000006001993 radians
R <sub>Z</sub>	=	+2.381 sec	= +0.000011543414 radians
dS	=	-5.109 ppm	
Ordinate 1 of evaluation point	=	2464351.59 m	
Ordinate 2 of evaluation point	=	-5783466.61 m	
Ordinate 3 of evaluation point	=	974809.81 m	

Ellipsoid Parameters for the source and target coordinate reference systems are:

<u>CRS name</u>	<u>Ellipsoid name</u>	<u>Semi-major axis (a)</u>	<u>Inverse flattening (1/f)</u>
La Canoa	International 1924	6378388.0 metres	1/f = 297.0
REGVEN	WGS 84	6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236

Input point coordinate system: La Canoa (geographic 2D)

Latitude $\phi_s$	=	9°35'00.386"N
Longitude $\lambda_s$	=	66°04'48.091"W

Step 1: Using the technique described in section 2.2.4 above, this is taken to be geographic 3D with an assumed ellipsoidal height  $h_s = 201.46$  m

Step 2: Using the geographic (3D) to geocentric conversion method given in section 2.2.1, these three coordinates convert to Cartesian geocentric coordinates:

X <sub>S</sub>	=	2 550 408.96 m
Y <sub>S</sub>	=	-5 749 912.26 m
Z <sub>S</sub>	=	1 054 891.11 m

Step 3: Application of the Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain) Transformation (section 2.4.3.3) results in:

X <sub>T</sub>	=	2 550 138.46 m
Y <sub>T</sub>	=	-5 749 799.87 m
Z <sub>T</sub>	=	1 054 530.82 m

on the REGVEN geocentric coordinate reference system (CRS code 4962)

Step 4: Using the reverse formulas for the geographic/geocentric conversion method given in section 2.2.1 on the REGVEN geographic 3D coordinate reference system (CRS code 4963) this converts into:

Latitude $\phi_T$	=	9°34'49.001"N
Longitude $\lambda_T$	=	66°04'54.705"W
Ellipsoidal height $h_T$	=	180.51 m

Step 5: Because the source coordinates were 2D, using method 2.2.4 the target system ellipsoidal height is dropped and the results treated as a geographic 2D coordinate reference system (CRS code 4189):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_T &= 9^\circ 34' 49.001'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_T &= 66^\circ 04' 54.705'' \text{W} \end{aligned}$$

Further examples of input and output for the Geocentric Translation (geographic domain) methods 9603 and 1035 may be found in test procedures 5212 and 5213 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

#### 2.4.4.1.1 France geocentric interpolation

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9655)

In France the national mapping agency (IGN) have promulgated a transformation between the classical geographic 2D coordinate reference system NTF and the modern 3-dimensional system RGF93 which uses geocentric translations interpolated from a grid file. The method is described in IGN document NTG-88. In summary:

- The grid file nodes are given in RGF93 geographic 2D coordinates.
- Within the grid file the sense of the parameter values is *from* NTF *to* RGF93.

For NTF to RGF93 transformations an iteration to obtain coordinates in the appropriate system for interpolation within the grid is required. The steps are:

- Convert NTF geographic 2D coordinates to geographic 3D by assuming a height and then to NTF geocentric coordinates.
- Transform NTF geocentric coordinates to approximate RGF93 coordinates using an average value for all France (EPSG dataset coordinate operation code 1651):

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\text{NTF}} &= X_{\text{RGF93}} - 168 \text{ m} \\ Y_{\text{NTF}} &= Y_{\text{RGF93}} - 60 \text{ m} \\ Z_{\text{NTF}} &= Z_{\text{RGF93}} + 320 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

- Convert the approximate RGF93 geocentric coordinates to approximate RGF93 geographic coordinates.
- Using the approximate RGF93 geographic coordinates, interpolate within the grid file to obtain the three geocentric translations (dX, dY, dZ) applicable at the point.
- Apply these geocentric translations to the NTF geocentric coordinates to obtain RGF93 geocentric coordinates:
- Transform RGF93 geocentric coordinates to NTF geocentric coordinates, taking account of the sense of the parameter values.

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\text{RGF93}} &= X_{\text{NTF}} + dX \\ Y_{\text{RGF93}} &= Y_{\text{NTF}} + dY \\ Z_{\text{RGF93}} &= Z_{\text{NTF}} + dZ \end{aligned}$$

- Convert RGF93 geocentric coordinates to RGF93 geographic 3D coordinates. Because the original input NTF coordinates were geographic 2D, the RGF93 ellipsoidal height is meaningless so it is dropped to give RGF93 geographic 3D coordinates.

For RGF93 to NTF transformations the steps are:

- Using the RGF93 geographic coordinates, interpolate within the grid file to obtain the three geocentric translations (dX, dY, dZ) applicable at the point.
- Convert RGF93 geographic coordinates to RGF93 geocentric coordinates.
- Transform RGF93 geocentric coordinates to NTF geocentric coordinates, taking into account the sense of the parameter values:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{\text{NTF}} &= X_{\text{RGF93}} + (-dX) \\ Y_{\text{NTF}} &= Y_{\text{RGF93}} + (-dY) \\ Z_{\text{NTF}} &= Z_{\text{RGF93}} + (-dZ) \end{aligned}$$

- Convert NTF geocentric coordinates to geographic 3D coordinates.

- Drop the ellipsoid height to give NTF geographic 2D coordinates.

**2.4.4.2 Abridged Molodensky transformation**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9605)

As an alternative to the computation of the new latitude, longitude and ellipsoid height by concatenation of three operations (geographic 3D to geocentric + geocentric to geocentric + geocentric to geographic 3D), the changes in these coordinates may be derived directly as geographic coordinate offsets through formulas derived by Molodensky (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9604, not detailed in this Guidance Note). Abridged versions of these formulas, which quite satisfactory for most practical purposes, are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \\ h_t &= h_s + dh\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}d\varphi &= (-dX \sin\varphi_s \cos\lambda_s - dY \sin\varphi_s \sin\lambda_s + dZ \cos\varphi_s + [a_s df + f_s da] \sin 2\varphi_s) / (\rho_s \sin 1'') \\ d\lambda &= (-dX \sin\lambda_s + dY \cos\lambda_s) / (v_s \cos\varphi_s \sin 1'') \\ dh &= dX \cos\varphi_s \cos\lambda_s + dY \cos\varphi_s \sin\lambda_s + dZ \sin\varphi_s + (a_s df + f_s da) \sin^2\varphi_s - da\end{aligned}$$

and where dX, dY and dZ are the geocentric translation parameters,  $\rho_s$  and  $v_s$  are the meridian and prime vertical radii of curvature at the given latitude  $\varphi_s$  on the first ellipsoid, da is the difference in the semi-major axes of the target and source ellipsoids and df is the difference in the flattening of the two ellipsoids:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho_s &= a_s (1 - e_s^2) / (1 - e_s^2 \sin^2\varphi_s)^{3/2} \\ v_s &= a_s / (1 - e_s^2 \sin^2\varphi_s)^{1/2} \\ da &= a_t - a_s \\ df &= f_t - f_s = 1/(1/f_t) - 1/(1/f_s).\end{aligned}$$

The formulas for dφ and dλ indicate changes in φ and λ in arc-seconds.

**Example:**

For a North Sea point with coordinates derived by GPS satellite in the WGS84 geographic coordinate reference system, with coordinates of:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N}, \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E}, \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s &= 73.0\text{m},\end{aligned}$$

whose coordinates are required in terms of the ED50 geographic coordinate reference system which takes the International 1924 ellipsoid.

The three geocentric translations parameter values *from* WGS 84 *to* ED50 for this North Sea area are given as dX = +84.87m, dY = +96.49m, dZ = +116.95m.

Ellipsoid Parameters are:

WGS 84	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236
International 1924	a = 6378388.0 metres	1/f = 297.0

Then

$$\begin{aligned}da &= 6378388 - 6378137 = 251 \\ df &= 0.003367003 - 0.003352811 = 1.41927\text{E-}05\end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned}d\varphi &= (-68.448 - 2.894 + 69.056 + 87.079) / 30.917 = 2.743'' \\ d\lambda &= (-3.154 + 96.423) / 18.299 = 5.097''\end{aligned}$$

$$dh = 50.079 + 2.117 + 94.385 + 59.510 - 251.000 = -44.909 \text{ m}$$

ED50 values on the International 1924 ellipsoid are then:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.563'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.477'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_t &= 28.091 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Because ED50 is a geographic 2D coordinate reference system the height is dropped to give:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.56'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.48'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

For comparison, better values computed through the concatenation of the three operations (geographic to geocentric + geocentric to geocentric + geocentric to geographic) are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.565'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.477'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_t &= 28.02 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Further examples of input and output may be found in test procedure 5213 of the Test Dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS)..

#### 2.4.4.3 Geographic Offsets

This is the simplest of transformations between two geographic coordinate reference systems, but is normally used only for purposes where low accuracy can be tolerated. It is generally used for transformations in two dimensions, latitude and longitude, where:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9619).

In very rare circumstances, a transformation in three dimensions additionally including ellipsoidal height may be encountered:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \\ h_t &= h_s + dh \end{aligned}$$

(EPSG coordinate operation method code 9660)

This should not be confused with the Geographic2D with Height Offsets method used in Japan, where the height difference is between the ellipsoidal height component of a 3D geographic coordinate reference system and a gravity-related height system. This is discussed in section 2.4.5 below.

#### **Example:**

A position with coordinates of  $38^\circ 08' 36.565'' \text{N}$ ,  $23^\circ 48' 16.235'' \text{E}$  referenced to the old Greek geographic 2D coordinate reference system (EPSG dataset CRS code 4120) is to be transformed to the newer GGRS87 system (EPSG dataset CRS code 4121). Transformation parameters from Greek to GGRS87 are:

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi &= -5.86'' \\ d\lambda &= +0.28'' \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } \varphi_{\text{GGRS87}} &= 38^\circ 08' 36.565'' \text{N} + (-5.86'') = 38^\circ 08' 30.705'' \text{N} \\ \text{and } \lambda_{\text{GGRS87}} &= 23^\circ 48' 16.235'' \text{E} + 0.28'' = 23^\circ 48' 16.515'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse transformation for the same point,

$$\varphi_{\text{GREEK}} = 38^\circ 08' 30.705'' \text{N} + 5.86'' = 38^\circ 08' 36.565'' \text{N}$$

$$\lambda_{\text{GREEK}} = 23^{\circ}48'16.515''\text{E} + (-0.28'') = 23^{\circ}48'16.235''\text{E}$$

#### 2.4.4.4 **Geographic Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data**

The relationship between some geographic 2D coordinate reference systems is available through gridded data sets of latitude and longitude offsets. This family of methods includes:

*NADCON* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9613) which is used by the US National Geodetic Survey for transformation between US systems;

*NTv2* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9615) which originated in the national mapping agency of Canada and was subsequently adopted in Australia, New Zealand and then several other countries; and

*OSTN* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9633) used in Great Britain.

The offsets at a point are derived by interpolation within the gridded data. In some methods, separate grid files are given for latitude and longitude offsets whilst in other methods the offsets for both latitude and longitude are given within a single grid file. The EPSG dataset differentiates methods by the format of the gridded data file(s). The grid file format is given in documentation available from the information source. Although the authors of some data sets suggest a particular interpolation method within the grid(s), generally the density of grid nodes should be such that any reasonable grid interpolation method will give the same offset value. Bi-linear interpolation is the most usual grid interpolation mechanism. The interpolated value of the offset *A* is then added to the source CRS coordinate value to give the coordinates in the target CRS.

#### **Reversibility**

The coordinate reference system for the coordinates of the grid nodes will be given either in the file itself or in accompanying documentation. This will normally be the source coordinate reference system for the forward transformation. Then in forward transformations the offset is obtained through straightforward interpolation of the grid file. But for the reverse transformation the first grid interpolation entry will be the value of the point in the second coordinate reference system, the offsets are interpolated and applied *with sign reversed*, and the result used in further iterations of interpolation and application of offset until the difference between results from successive iterations is insignificant.

#### **Example**

Examples for the *NADCON* and *NTv2* methods may be found in test procedures 5206 and 5207 of the test dataset which accompanies OGP Publication 430, Geospatial Integrity in Geoscience Software (GIGS).

### 2.4.5 **Geoid and Height Correction Models**

#### 2.4.5.1 **Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight**

Although superficially involving a change of dimension from three to one, this transformation method is actually one-dimensional. The transformation applies an offset to the ellipsoidal height component of a geographic 3D coordinate reference system with the result being a gravity-related height in a vertical coordinate reference system. However the ellipsoidal height component of a geographic 3D coordinate reference system cannot exist without the horizontal components, i.e. it cannot exist as a one-dimensional coordinate reference system.

Geodetic science distinguishes between geoid-ellipsoid separation models and height correction models. Geoid separation models give the height difference between the ellipsoid and the geoid surfaces. Height correction models give height difference between ellipsoidal a particular vertical datum surface. Because a vertical datum is a realisation of the geoid and includes measurement errors and various constraints, a vertical datum surface will not exactly coincide with the geoid surface. The mathematics of the application of these models is identical and for the purposes of the EPSG dataset they are considered to be one method.

The correction value  $\zeta^5$  is interpolated from a grid of height differences and the interpolation requires the latitude and longitude components of the geographic 3D coordinate reference system as arguments.

If  $\mathbf{h}$  is the ellipsoidal height (height of point above the ellipsoid, positive if up) in the geographic 3D CRS and  $\mathbf{H}$  is the gravity-related height in a vertical CRS, then

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{h} - \zeta$$

Note that unlike the general convention adopted for offsets described in 2.4.1, geoid separation and height correction models conventionally use the true mathematical convention for sign.

The EPSG dataset differentiates between the formats of the gridded height files and distinguishes separate coordinate operation methods for each file format. The coordinate operation method may also define the interpolation technique to be used. However the density of grid nodes is usually sufficient for any reasonable interpolation technique to be used, with bi-linear interpolation usually being applied.

### **Reversibility**

The reverse transformation, from gravity-related height in the vertical coordinate reference system to the ellipsoidal height component of the geographic3D coordinate reference system, requires that a horizontal position be associated with the gravity-related height. This is indeterminate unless a compound coordinate reference system is involved (see the Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight method described below). Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight methods therefore are not reversible.

#### **2.4.5.2 Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight**

This method transforms coordinates between a geographic 3D coordinate reference system and a compound coordinate reference system consisting of separate geographic 2D and vertical coordinate reference systems. Separate operations are made between the horizontal and vertical components. In its simplest form it combines a Geographic 3D to 2D conversion and a Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight transformation (see sections 2.2.2 and 2.4.5.1 above). However, complexities arise (a) for the forward transformation if the source 3D and target 2D geographic coordinate reference systems are based on different geodetic datums, or (b) in the reverse transformation of height from compound to geographic 3D.

#### **Horizontal component**

If the horizontal component of the compound coordinate reference system and the geographic 3D coordinate reference system are based on the same geodetic datum, this operation is simply the Geographic 3D to 2D conversion described in section 2.2.2 above except that for the reverse case (2D to 3D) no assumption is required for the ellipsoidal height as it will come from the operation for the vertical part.

If the horizontal component of the compound coordinate reference system and the geographic 3D coordinate reference system are based on different geodetic datums then any of the geographic to geographic transformations discussed in section 2.4.4 above, including those using geocentric methods (sections 2.4.3 and 2.4.4.1), may be used.

#### **Vertical component**

The forward transformation from geographic 3D to vertical component of the compound system uses the Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight method described in section 2.4.5.1 above. Then:

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{h} - \zeta$$

where, as before,  $\mathbf{h}$  is the ellipsoidal height (height of point above the ellipsoid, positive if up) in the geographic 3D CRS,  $\mathbf{H}$  is the gravity-related height in the vertical CRS part of the compound CRS and  $\zeta$  is

<sup>5</sup> Geodetic science recognises several types of gravity-related height, differentiated by assumptions made about the gravitational field. A discussion of these types is beyond the scope of this document. In this document the symbol  $\zeta$  is used to indicate the correction to be applied to the ellipsoid height.

the correction from ellipsoidal height to gravity-related height from the gridded data.

The reverse transformation, from vertical component of the compound system to geographic 3D system, requires interpolation within the grid of height differences. However the latitude and longitude arguments for this interpolation must be in the geographic 3D coordinate reference system, as the nodes for the gridded data will be in this system. Therefore the reverse operation on the horizontal component of the compound system must be executed before the reverse vertical transformation can be made. Then:

$$h = H - \zeta$$

### **2.4.5.3 Geographic2D with Height Offsets**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9618)

This method used in Japan is a simplified form of the general Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight method described above. It combines the geographic 2D offset method described in section 2.4.4.3 above with an ellipsoidal height to gravity-related height value A applied as a vertical offset.

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{\text{WGS84}} &= \varphi_{\text{Tokyo}} + d\varphi \\ \lambda_{\text{WGS84}} &= \lambda_{\text{Tokyo}} + d\lambda \\ h_{\text{WGS84}} &= H_{\text{JSLD}} + A \end{aligned}$$

©OGP, 1995-2012.

*(OGP contact details, disclaimer and copyright notice to be inserted here).*